THE LOCATION OF AFRICA ON THE WORLD MAP

Africa is located between 37°N, 35°S, 52°E, and 17°W.

Give any two ways of locating Africa on the world map.

- ✓ By use of surrounding water bodies.
- ✓ By use of neighbouring continents.
- ✓ By use of latitudes and longitudes.

State any four ways of locating places on a map.

- ✓ By using the position of the sun.
- ✓ By using the position of stars.
- ✓ By using landmarks.
- ✓ By using compass direction.
- ✓ By using grid reference.

State any three ways the sun can help people to locate places.

- ✓ By following the movement of the sun.
- ✓ By identifying where the sun rises and sets.
- ✓ By identifying the position of the sun at different times of the day.

Grid Reference

What is grid reference?

- ✓ Grid reference is the way of locating places on a map using latitudes and longitudes.

Lines of latitude/latitudes

- ✓ **Lines of latitude** are imaginary lines drawn on a map or globe from East to West.
- ✓ They are also called **Parallels**.

Give the reason why lines of latitude are also called Northings.

- ✓ They increase their degrees northwards.

What is latitude?

- ✓ Latitude is the distance of a place North or South of the Equator.

Name the major line of latitude marked 0^o

- ✓ **Equator**

Give the reasons why the Equator is marked O^0.

- ✓ Equator is the starting point of other lines of latitude.
- ✓ Equator is the midpoint of the world.
- ✓ Equator is the centre line on the globe.
- ✓ Equator divides the world into two equal hemispheres.

State any two reasons why the Equator is regarded as the major line of latitude.

- ✓ It divides the world into two equal hemispheres.
- ✓ It is the starting line of other latitudes.

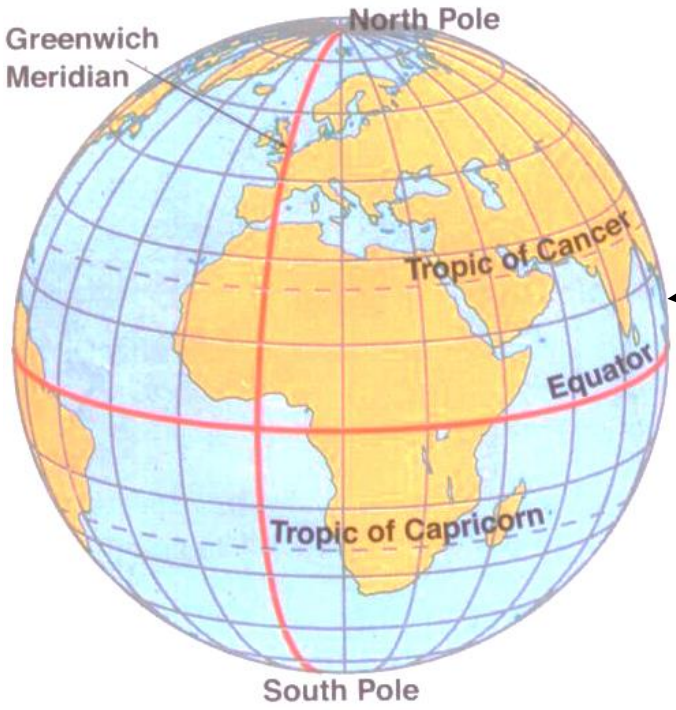
Apart from Equator, name any other four important lines of latitude.

- ✓ The tropic of cancer 2312N.
- ✓ The tropic of Capricorn $23^1{}_2$S.
- ✓ The Arctic Circle $66^{o1}{}_2$N.
- ✓ The Antarctic Circle $66^{o1}{}_2$S.

What do we call an area between tropic of cancer and tropic of Capricorn?

- ✓ Tropical region

A diagram showing the major lines of latitude



International Date Line

What is a hemisphere?

✓ A hemisphere is the half of the world after being crossed by Equator or Greenwich meridian.

Mention four examples of hemispheres

✓ Eastern hemisphere.
✓ Western hemisphere.
✓ Northern hemisphere.
✓ Southern hemisphere.

Mention any two importance of lines of latitude

✓ They help to locate places on the map.
✓ They modify the climate.

How do lines of latitude modify climate?

✓ They influence rain formation.

How are lines of latitudes important to a pilot?

✓ They help a pilot to locate places on a map.

Name the countries crossed by the Equator in Africa

✓ Uganda
✓ Kenya
✓ Somalia
✓ Congo
✓ Gabon
✓ Democratic Republic of the Congo

Name the Island country crossed by Equator in Africa.

✓ Sao Tome and Principe.

Note: All the countries crossed by **Equator** are found in both Northern and Southern hemispheres.

Name the line of latitude which is marked $23^1/_2$N.

✓ Tropic of cancer.

Mention the Countries crossed by Tropic of Capricorn in Africa

✓ Namibia
✓ Botswana
✓ Zimbabwe
✓ Mozambique
✓ Madagascar

Name the line of latitude which is marked $23^1/_2$S.
- ✓ Tropic of Capricorn

Mention the countries crossed by Tropic of Cancer in Africa
- ✓ Egypt
- ✓ Libya
- ✓ Niger
- ✓ Chad
- ✓ Mali
- ✓ Mauritania
- ✓ Western Sahara
- ✓ Madagascar

Name the Island country crossed by Tropic of Capricorn in Africa.
- ✓ Madagascar

Lines of longitude/longitudes
What are lines of longitude?
- ✓ **Lines of longitude** are imaginary lines drawn on the major globe from North to South.
- ✓ They are also called **Meridians.**

What is longitude?
- ✓ Longitude is the distance of a place East or West of the Greenwich Meridian.

Name the major line of longitude.
- ✓ Greenwich Meridian or Prime Meridian.

***Note*:** Greenwich Meridian is marked 0^o.

Why Prime Meridian is also called Greenwich Meridian?
- ✓ It crosses Greenwich town in England.

Apart from Greenwich Meridian, name another important line of longitude
- ✓ International Date Line 180^o East or West.

Give one importance of International Date Line.
- ✓ It determines days and dates.

Mention any two importance of lines of longitude.
- ✓ To tell time
- ✓ They help to locate places on a map.

Name the line of longitude which divides the world into Eastern and Western hemispheres.
- ✓ Greenwich Meridian.

Which line of longitude helps to determine time?
- ✓ Greenwich Meridian

Name the countries crossed by the Greenwich Meridian in Africa
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Mali
- ✓ Burkina Faso
- ✓ Algeria

Name the town/city crossed by the Greenwich Meridian in West Africa.
- ✓ Accra

***Note:** Algeria is crossed by both Tropic of Cancer and Greenwich Meridian.*

Why lines of latitude and longitude are called imaginary?
- ✓ They are not physically seen.

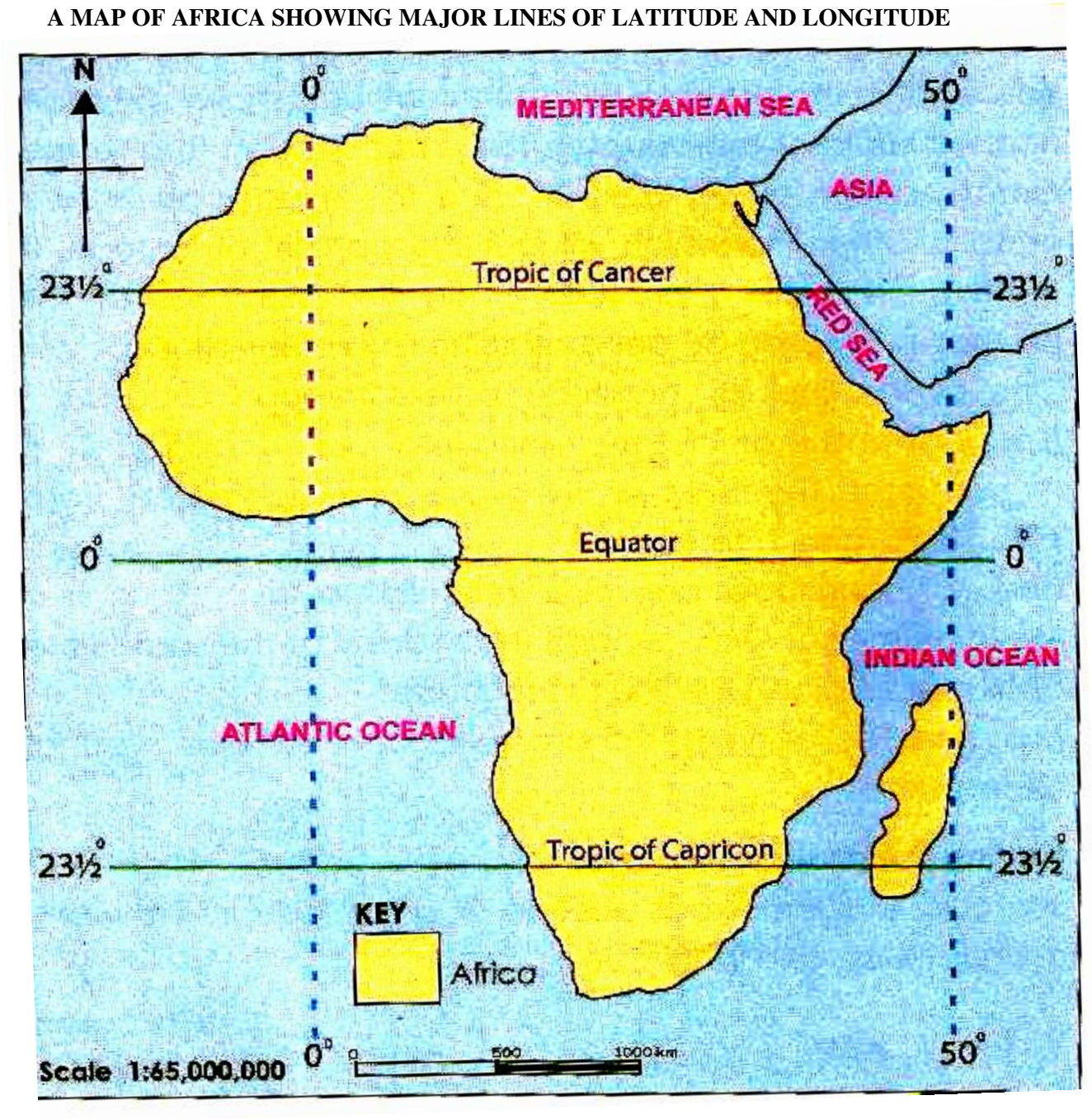
How are latitudes similar to longitudes?

- ✓ Both locate places on a map
- ✓ Both are imaginary lines.
- ✓ Both are drawn on maps.

How are lines of latitude different from lines of longitude?

- ✓ Lines of longitude determine time unlike lines of latitude
- ✓ Lines of latitude determine the climate of an area unlike lines of longitude
- ✓ Lines of longitude meet at the North and South Poles while lines of latitude are parallel
- ✓ Lines of latitude measure from 0^o to 90^o while lines of longitude measure from 0^o to 180^o
- ✓ Lines of latitude cross from east to west while lines of longitude cross from the North Pole to the South Pole
- ✓ The major line of latitude is Equator while the major line of longitude is Prime Meridian/Greenwich Meridian

A MAP OF AFRICA SHOWING MAJOR LINES OF LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE



TIME ZONE

What is a time zone?

✓ A time zone is an area with uniform standard time in a day.

Which line of longitude helps to determine time?

✓ Greenwich Meridian

How many tines zones are in the world?

Twenty four time zones.

What do we call the time zone of East African countries?

✓ East Africa Time.

Why is Uganda and Rwanda have different time yet they are found in the same geographical region?

✓ They have different time zones.

Note: When one moves East or West of the Greenwich Meridian, time changes by **4 minutes** every after **1^0.** When one moves **East** of the Greenwich Meridian, time **"increases** "while moving **West** of the Greenwich Meridian time "decrease"

Example

1. It is 10:00a.m at the GMT. What time will it be if one moves 30^0E

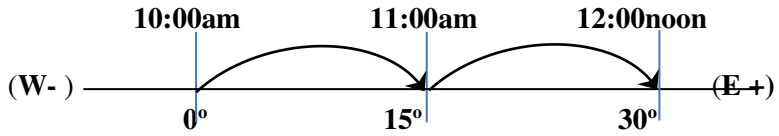
   = $\frac{30}{15}$ 2

   = 2 hours

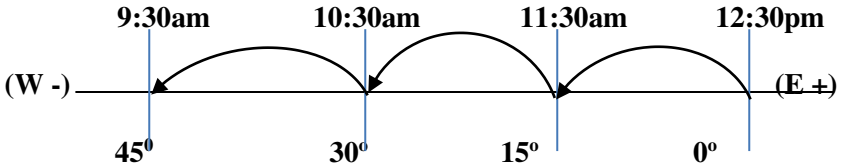
Since movement is to the East. We add 2 hours to the original time.

```
  10 : 00 am
+  2 : 00 hrs
  12 : 00 Noon
```

Method 2.



2. The time in Nairobi Kenya is 12:30p.m. What time will it be if one moves 45^0 W of the Prime Meridian?



✓ **It will be 9:30am.**

World continents and their sizes

What is a content?

✓ A continent is a large mass of land surrounded by water.

✓ A continent is a large mass of land on the earth's surface.

How were the continents of the world formed?

✓ By continental drifting.

Name the continents of the world according to their size.

- ✓ Asia
- ✓ Africa
- ✓ North America
- ✓ South America
- ✓ Antarctica
- ✓ Europe
- ✓ Australia

How many continents make up the world?

- ✓ Seven continents

Name the largest continent in the world.

- ✓ Asia

Name the second largest continent in the world.

- ✓ Africa

Name the smallest continent in the world.

- ✓ Australia

Name the continent which is not suitable for human settlement.

- ✓ Antarctica

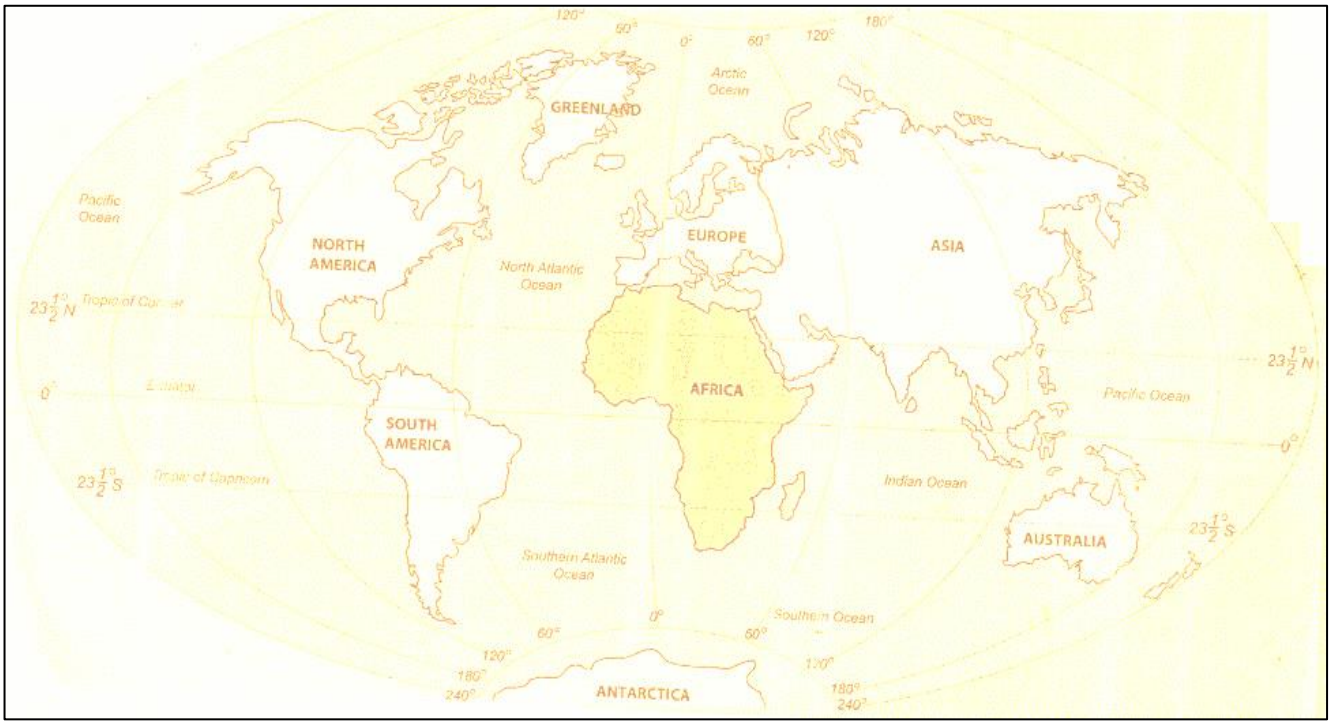
Give the reason why Antarctica does not favour human settlement.

- ✓ Antarctica is frozen.

Name the continents that neighbour Africa in the following directions.

a) **North**– Europe.
b) **East**– Australia.
c) **South**– Antarctica.
d) **West South**–America.
e) **North West** - North America.
f) **North East**– Asia.

A MAP SHOWING CONTINENTS OF THE WORLD



Name the water bodies that border Africa in the following directions.

a) **North** - Mediterranean Sea
b) East - Indian Ocean
c) **West** - Atlantic Ocean
d) **North East** - Red sea

Name the water body that separates Africa from Europe.

✓ Mediterranean Sea

Which water body separates Africa from Asia?

✓ Red sea

Name the water channel that connects Mozambique to Madagascar.

✓ Mozambique Channel.

Apart from large water bodies, name other important features which are enclosed to Africa.

✓ Straits
✓ Gulfs
✓ Isthmus
✓ Capes

Straits

What is a strait?

✓ A strait is a narrow water passage between two land masses.

Give any two examples of straits of Africa

✓ The strait of Gibraltar in the North-West of Africa
✓ The strait of Babel Mandeb in the North-East of Africa

Name the water passage that connects Africa to Europe.

✓ Strait of Gibraltar

Name the water passage that connects Red sea to the Gulf of Aden.

✓ Strait of Babel Mandeb

Gulf

What is a gulf?

✓ A gulf is a large area of sea which is partly enclosed by land.

Give any four examples of gulfs of Africa

✓ Gulf of Aden
✓ Gulf of Guinea
✓ Gulf of Gabes
✓ Gulf of Sirte

Name the gulf located near the horn of Africa.

✓ Gulf of Aden.

Name the gulfs that are found in North Africa near the Red sea

✓ Gulf of Sirte
✓ Gulf of Gabes

Suez Canal

Name the water body that joins the Red sea to the Mediterranean Sea.

✓ Suez Canal

Give the reason why Suez Canal was constructed.

✓ To make water transport easy from Asia to Europe.

Name the countries that funded the construction of the Suez Canal.
- ✓ France
- ✓ Britain

Isthmus
What is an Isthmus?
- ✓ An Isthmus is a narrow strip of land joining two large land masses.

Peninsula
What is a peninsula?
- ✓ A peninsula is a land that is almost surrounded by water

Give two examples of peninsula in Africa.
- ✓ Sinai Peninsula of Egypt
- ✓ Arabian Peninsula

Cape
What is a cape?
- ✓ A Cape is a piece of land jutting into the sea.

Mention four examples of capes in Africa.
- ✓ Cape Town
- ✓ Cape Guadafi
- ✓ Cape Verde
- ✓ Cape blanc

How is Africa different / unique from other continents of the world?
- ✓ Africa is crossed by all major lines of latitude unlike other continents.
- ✓ Africa has the largest number of land located countries.
- ✓ Africa is found in the central of all continents.
- ✓ Africa has the hottest desert called Sahara desert.

Geographical regions of Africa
How many geographical regions make up Africa?
- ✓ Six geographical regions.

Name the geographical regions that make up Africa.
- ✓ East Africa
- ✓ West Africa
- ✓ Northern Africa
- ✓ Southern Africa
- ✓ Central Africa
- ✓ Horn of Africa

East Africa
How many countries make up East Africa?
- ✓ Six countries.

Name the countries that make up East Africa with their capital cities.

Country	***Capital city***
Uganda	Kampala
Kenya	Nairobi
Tanzania	Dodoma
Rwanda	Kigali
Burundi	Gitega

West Africa

Country	*Capital city*
Ghana	Accra
Nigeria	Abuja
Niger	Niamey
Mali	Bamako
Togo	Lome
Benin	Porto - Novo
Ivory Coast	Yamoussoukro
Liberia	Monrovia
Guinea	Conakry
Senegal	Dakar
Guinea Bissau	Bissau
Gambia	Banjul
Sierra Leone	Freetown
Cameroon	Yaounde
Burkina Faso	Ouagadougou
Mauritania	Nauakchott
Equatorial Guinea	Malabo
Cape Verde	Praia

North Africa

Country	*capital city*
Libya	Tripoli
Egypt	Cairo
Algeria	Algiers
Morocco	Rabat
Tunisia	Tunis
Sudan	Khartoum
South Sudan	Juba
Chad	N'Djamena

- ✓ *Note:* **Algeria** is the largest country in Africa.

Southern Africa

Country	*capital city*
South Africa	Pretoria, Cape Town, Bloemfontein
Eswatin	Mbabane
Lesotho	Maseru
Botswana	Gaborone
Namibia	Windhoek
Zimbabwe	Harare
Mozambique	Maputo
Angola	Luanda
Zambia	Lusaka
Malawi	Lilongwe
Madagascar	Antananarivo

Central Africa

Country	*capital city*
Central African Republic	Bangui
Democratic Republic of the Congo	Kinshasa
Congo	Brazzaville
Gabon	Libreville

Horn of Africa

Why Horn of Africa is called so?

- ✓ It is has a horn like shape.

- ✓ ***Note:*** Horn of Africa is also called **North East Africa**

Name the countries that make up the horn of Africa.

Country	*capital city*
Ethiopia	Addis Ababa
Somalia	Mogadishu
Djibouti	Djibouti
Eritrea	Asmara

Enclave states of Africa.

What is an enclave State?

- ✓ An enclave state is an independent country found within another independent country**.**

Name one enclave states in Africa

- ✓ Lesotho

Note: The above Enclave State is found in South Africa.

Island states of Africa

What is an Island?

- ✓ An island is a piece of land completely surrounded by water.

What is an Island State?

- ✓ An island state is a country completely surrounded by water.

Island states of Africa

Country	*capital city*
Madagascar	Antananarivo
Cape Verde	Praia
Comoros	Moron
Seychelles	Victoria
Mauritius	Port – Louis
Sao Tome and Principe	Sao Tome

Give the two Island countries found in Atlantic Ocean in Africa.

- ✓ Cape Verde
- ✓ Sao Tome and Principe

Mention the four Island countries found in Indian Ocean in Africa

- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Comoros
- ✓ Mauritius
- ✓ Seychelles

Note: **Seychelles** is the smallest country in Africa.

Landlocked Countries in Africa

- ✓ A landlocked country is a country without a seaport.
- ✓ A landlocked country is a country which has no coastline.
- ✓ A landlocked country is a country completely surrounded by land.

Name the landlocked countries in Africa

- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ Mali
- ✓ Niger
- ✓ Ethiopia
- ✓ South Sudan
- ✓ Chad
- ✓ Central African Republic

Mention any three problems faced by landlocked countries.

- ✓ Delay of goods in transit.
- ✓ Heavy taxes charged on imports and exports.
- ✓ Smuggling.

State four ways landlocked countries can solve their problems

- ✓ By promoting international relationship with non-land locked countries.
- ✓ By promoting railway transport.
- ✓ By promoting air transport.
- ✓ By promoting industrialization.

Smuggling

What is smuggling?

- ✓ Smuggling is the illegal exportation and importation of goods.

State any four ways smuggling is dangerous to a country.

- ✓ It reduces tax base.
- ✓ It reduces goods in the country.
- ✓ It leads to importation of expired goods.
- ✓ It leads to loss of market for local goods.

State any thee ways of controlling smuggling

- ✓ By strengthening border security.
- ✓ By educating people about the dangers of smuggling.
- ✓ By enforcing strict laws on smuggling.

Give one way smuggling affects the health sector of a country.

- ✓ Smuggling leads to importation of expired drugs.
- ✓ Smuggling leads to illegal exportation drugs.
- ✓ Smuggling reduces taxes which could increase revenue to buy drugs.

Imports

What are imports?

- ✓ Imports are goods which enter the country.

Mention four major imports of Africa

- ✓ Expertise
- ✓ Medicine
- ✓ Vehicles
- ✓ Machines

What name is given to the tax imposed on imports?

✓ Customs duty

Exports

What are exports?

✓ Exports are goods which leave a country.

Name the major export of African countries.

✓ Agricultural products.

What do we call the tax charged on locally manufactured goods?

✓ Excise duty

Give any two reasons why most African countries export more raw materials than finished goods.

✓ Due to shortage of skilled labour used in production of finished goods.

✓ Due to poor technology to process raw materials into finished goods.

How many countries are in Africa as a continent?

✓ 54 countries

A MAP SHOWING AFRICAN COUNTRIES



PHYSICAL FEATURES OF AFRICA

What are physical features?

- ✓ Physical features are landforms of an area.

What is another name of physical features?

- ✓ Landforms

Name two forces that led to the formation of physical features.

- ✓ Tensional force
- ✓ Compressional force

Give two types of physical features.

- ✓ Relief features
- ✓ Drainage features

Relief features

What are relief features?

- ✓ Relief features are physical features which are identical according to their altitude

What is relief?

- ✓ Relief is the general appearance of landscape.

Mention any four examples of relief features.

- ✓ Highlands/mountains
- ✓ Rift valley
- ✓ Coastal plains
- ✓ Plateau
- ✓ Inselbergs
- ✓ Hills

Drainage features

What are drainage features?

- ✓ Drainage features are features which are identical according to ground water system.

What is drainage?

- ✓ Drainage is the ground water system of an area.

Mention any four examples of drainage feature.

- ✓ Lake
- ✓ Rivers
- ✓ Streams
- ✓ Seas
- ✓ Oceans
- ✓ Hot springs.

Write down examples of physical features in Africa

- ✓ Mountains
- ✓ Valleys
- ✓ Rivers
- ✓ Coastal plains
- ✓ Rift Valley
- ✓ Plateau
- ✓ Lakes
- ✓ Coastal region
- ✓ Hills
- ✓ Oceans
- ✓ Hot springs
- ✓ Inselbergs
- ✓ Streams

A MAP SHOWING THE PHYSICAL FEATURES OF AFRICA



FORMATION OF PHYSICAL FEATURES IN AFRICA

Mountains

- ✓ A mountain is a very high raised piece of land.
- ✓ A mountain is the highest physical feature.

Give three types of mountains in Africa

- ✓ Block Mountains
- ✓ Volcanic mountains
- ✓ Fold Mountains

Block Mountains

What are Block Mountains?

- ✓ These are mountains which were formed by faulting

Note: *Block Mountains are also called* ***Horst Mountains.***

How were Block Mountains formed?
- ✓ By faulting.

What is faulting?
- ✓ Faulting is the breaking of rocks of the earth's crust.

Mention examples of Block Mountains in Africa.

Mountain	*Country*
Mt. Rwenzori	Uganda
Mt. Rungwe	Kenya
Mt. Uluguru	Tanzania
Mt. Usambara	Tanzania
Mt. Pale	Tanzania
Mt. Danakil	Ethiopia

Name the highest block mountain in Africa.
- ✓ Mount Rwenzori

Give two forces that led to the formation of Block Mountains.
- ✓ Tensional force
- ✓ Compressional force (***The teacher should explain to learners***).

Apart from Block Mountains, name other physical features that were formed by faulting.
- ✓ Rift valley
- ✓ Escarpments

State any three importance of faulting.
- ✓ It led to formation of block Mountains.
- ✓ It led formation of escarpments.
- ✓ It led to formation of rift valley.

Volcanic Mountains
What are volcanic mountains?
- ✓ Volcanic mountains are mountains which were formed by volcanicity.

What is volcanicity?
- ✓ Volcanicity is the process by which molten rocks (magma) are forced to the earth's surface from underground through vent.

Mention three types of volcanoes/volcanic mountains.
- ✓ Active volcanoes
- ✓ Dormant volcanoes
- ✓ Extinct volcanoes

Active volcanoes
What are active volcanoes?
- ✓ These are volcanoes which show signs of eruption and can erupt at any time.

Mention examples of active volcanoes in Africa.

Mountain	*Country*
Mt. Ol donyo lengai	Tanzania
Mt. Nyirangongo	D.R.C
Mt. Nyamulagira	D.R.C
Mt. Mufumbiro	Uganda
Mt. Cameroon	Cameroon

Dormant volcanoes

What are dormant volcanoes?

✓ These are volcanoes which do not show signs of eruption but can erupt.

Note: *Dormant volcanoes are also called sleeping volcanoes.*

Mention examples of dormant volcanoes in Africa.

Mountain	***Country***
Mt. Moroto	Uganda
Mt. Muhavura	Uganda
Mt. Longonot	Kenya
Tibesti Mountains	Chad

Name the largest block mountain in central Sahara.

✓ Tibesti mountains

Extinct volcanoes

What are extinct volcanoes?

✓ These are volcanoes which erupted long time ago and they cannot erupt again.

Note:*1. Extinct volcanoes are also called* ***dead volcanoes****.*

2. Extinct volcanoes are characterized with a caldera or Crater Lake on top.

Mention examples of extinct volcanoes in Africa.

Mountain	***Country***
Mt. Elgon	Uganda
Mt. Kenya	Kenya
Mt. Kilimanjaro	Tanzania
Drakensberg Mountains	South Africa

Apart from volcanoes, name other physical features that were formed by volcanicity.

✓ Crater lakes
✓ Caldera
✓ Lava dammed lakes
✓ Volcanic plug
✓ Volcanic lakes
✓ Inselbergs
✓ Hot springs

Give the meaning of the following terms.

✓ **A volcano -** Is a feature which is formed when the molten rocks solidifies on the earth's surface.
✓ **Magma**- Is the molten rocks underground.
✓ **A vent**- Is a pipe through which molten rocks pass from the earth's crust to the earth's surface.
✓ **Lava-** Is the molten rocks solidified on the earth's surface after eruption.

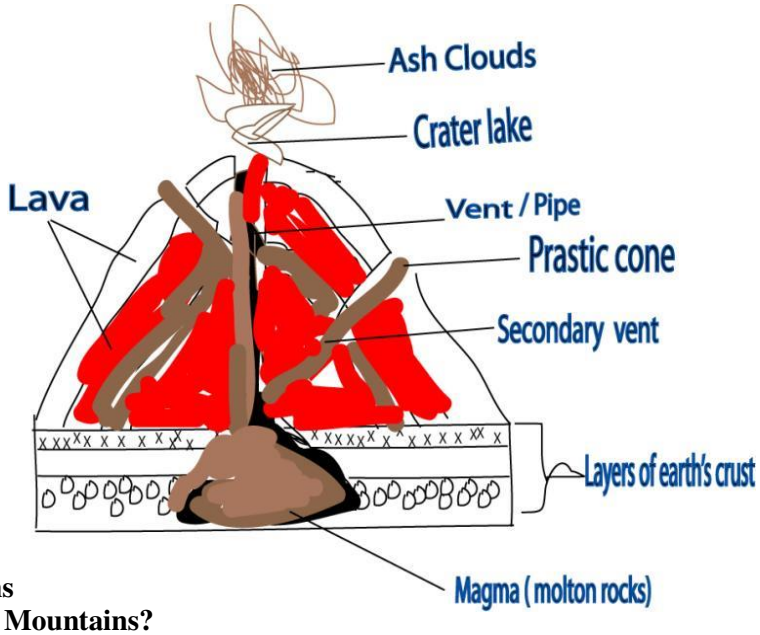
Mention any four importance of volcanicity.

✓ It led to formation of Crater lakes
✓ It led to formation of Calder
✓ It led to formation of Lava dammed lakes
✓ It led to formation of volcanic lakes
✓ It led to formation of Inselbergs
✓ It led to formation of Hot springs
✓ It led to formation of volcanoes

State two disadvantages of volcanicity

✓ It leads to death of people and animals.
✓ It leads to displacement of people.

A diagram showing a volcanic mountain



Fold Mountains

What are Fold Mountains?

✓ Fold Mountains are mountains which were formed as a result of folding.

How were Fold Mountains formed?

✓ By folding.

Name the forces that led to the formation of Fold Mountains.

✓ Compressional forces

What name is given to the sunken part of a fold mountain?

✓ Syncline

What do we call the uplifted part of a fold mountain?

✓ Anticline

Name two examples of fold Mountains in Africa.

Mountain	***Country***
Atlas Mountains	Morocco
Cape ranges	South Africa

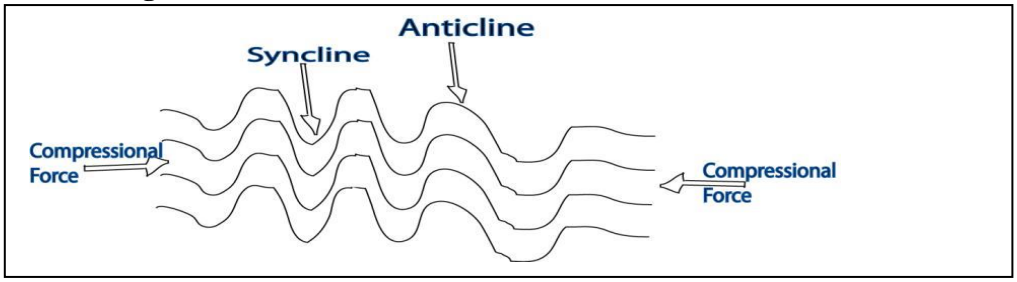
How are Drakensberg Mountains different from Atlas Mountains in terms of formation?

✓ Drakensberg mountains were formed by volcanicity while Atlas Mountains by folding

How are Drakensberg Mountains different from Atlas Mountains?

✓ Drakensberg Mountains are volcanic mountains while Atlas Mountains are Fold Mountains.

A diagram showing the formation of Fold Mountains



Mention any three economic importance of mountains
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They have fertile soils for crop growing.
- ✓ They help in rail formation.
- ✓ They create employment to people.
- ✓ They are sources of minerals.
- ✓ Some mountains are source of some rivers which attract tourists.

Mention any two social importance of mountains.
- ✓ They are used for study research.
- ✓ They provide shelter to wild animals.
- ✓ They provide rocks for building.

How are mountains politically important to African countries?
- ✓ They form natural borders between countries.

How do Mountains influence or affect climate?
- ✓ They help in rain formation.

How do mountains help in rain formation?
- ✓ Mountains force warm winds to rise and form rain.

Mention any four economic activities carried around highlands and mountains
- ✓ Crop growing
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Quarrying
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Animal rearing
- ✓ Lumbering

Give any four disadvantages of mountains.
- ✓ Some mountains erupt and kill people.
- ✓ They make road construction difficult.
- ✓ They are homes dangerous wild animals.
- ✓ They act as rain shadow.
- ✓ They promote severe soil erosion.

What is a rain shadow?
- ✓ A rain shadow is the leeward side of the mountain which does not receive rainfall.

Mention any four problems associated or faced by people living near mountainous areas.
- ✓ Landslides
- ✓ Mudslides
- ✓ Soil erosion
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Volcanic eruption
- ✓ Dangerous wild animals

Give any four possible solutions to the above problems.
- ✓ Use of animal transport
- ✓ Use of terraces to control soil erosion
- ✓ Use of ox-ploughing where tractors cannot work
- ✓ Avoid deforestation on mountain slopes
- ✓ Planting more trees on mountain slopes to control landslides.
- ✓ Constructing winding roads

Give any four ways of controlling soil erosion in mountainous areas.
- ✓ By terracing
- ✓ By contour ploughing
- ✓ By strip cropping
- ✓ By planting trees on mountain slopes

Mention any two ways mountains and highlands hinder the economic development of an area.
- ✓ They cause poor transport.
- ✓ They cause landslides which destroy property.
- ✓ They erupt and destroy people's property.
- ✓ They act as hideout of rebels.
- ✓ They experience soil erosion which affects agriculture.

State any two way mountains and highlands affect transport network?
- ✓ They make the construction of transport routes difficult.
- ✓ They experience landslides which destroy transport routes.

Give any two ways of solving the problem of poor transport network in mountainous areas.
- ✓ By constructing winding roads.
- ✓ By encouraging people to keep donkeys.

Give one reason why mechanization is difficult in highland areas
- ✓ Highland areas are not flat.

Give any two reasons why people settle in highland and mountainous areas.
- ✓ Presence of fertile soils which favour agriculture.
- ✓ Presence of good climate which favour agriculture.

Why there are few people living in higher parts of mountains?
- ✓ Higher parts of mountains experience very cold conditions
- ✓ Transport and communication is difficult on higher parts on the mountain

Altitude

What is altitude?
- ✓ Altitude is the height of land above the sea level.

Name the instrument used to measure altitude.

Altimeter

Give one reason why some mountains are snowcapped.
- ✓ Their peaks are above the snowline.

What is a mountain peak?
- ✓ A mountain peak is the highest part of a mountain.

Mention three snowcapped mountains in Africa.

Mountain	***Mountain peak***	***Country***
Mt. Rwenzori	Margherita	Uganda
Mt. Kenya	kibo	Kenya
Mt. Kilimanjaro	Batian	Tanzania

Give one way mount Rwenzori and Mount Kilimanjaro are Similar?
- ✓ Both are snowcapped throughout the year.

Name the highest mountain in Africa.
- ✓ Mt. Kilimanjaro

Complete the table below.

Mountain	***Mountain Peak***
Ethiopian highlands	Rasdashan
Atlas Mountains	Toubkal
Drakensberg Mountains	Thabana Ntlenyana
Cameroon Mountains	Fako
Ahaggar Mountain	Mount Tahat peak
Mt. Moroto	Sokodek

Inselbergs

What is an inselberg?

- ✓ An inselberg is a hill exposed to surface as a result of erosion.

Name two inselbergs in Africa.

- ✓ Osukuru hills
- ✓ Majimoto hills

Give any two importance of Inselbergs.

- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They are used for quarrying activities.
- ✓ They are sources of raw materials for construction.
- ✓ They are sources of minerals like limestone.

A MAP SHOWING MOUNTAINS AND HIGHLANDS OF AFRICA



The plateau of Africa

What is plateau?

- ✓ A plateau is a raised flat topped piece of land.
- ✓ A plateau is the table like land.

Name the physical feature which covers the largest part of Africa.

- ✓ Plateau

How as plateau formed?

- ✓ By volcanicity

Mention examples of plateaux in Africa

Plateau	***Country***
Nyika plateau	Kenya
Yatta plateau	Kenya
Jos plateau	Nigeria
Ahaggar (***Tasili***)plateau	Algeria
Tibesti plateau	Chad
Bie plateau	Angola
Fouta Djallon or guinea	Guinea

Mention any four human activities carried out on plateaux of Africa.

- ✓ Farming
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Transport
- ✓ Lumbering
- ✓ Trade
- ✓ Industrialization,
- ✓ Nomadic pastoralism

State any four importance of plateau.

- ✓ It is used for crop growing
- ✓ It is used for animal rearing
- ✓ It is used for settlement
- ✓ It is used for industrialization
- ✓ It is used for mining

Give any three reasons why a plateau is good for human settlement

- ✓ It has fertile soils for agriculture.
- ✓ It has pasture for cattle keeping.
- ✓ It is easy to construct houses on a plateau.
- ✓ There is easy transport on plateau.

Coral reefs

What are coral reefs?

- ✓ Coral reefs are hard rocks formed as a result of decomposition of sea mammals.

State any three importance of coral reefs.

- ✓ They attract tourist who bring income.
- ✓ They provide limestone for making cement.
- ✓ They are home water animals.

State any three dangers of coral reefs.

- ✓ They hinder water transport.
- ✓ They cause water accidents
- ✓ The make landing of water vessels difficult.

Give any two ways coral reefs hinder water transport.

- ✓ They cause water accidents
- ✓ The make landing of water vessels difficult.

Coastal plains

What is a coastal plain?

- ✓ A coastal plain is a narrow strip of land which borders an ocean or sea.

Mention any four tourist attractions found at the coast.

- ✓ Rivers
- ✓ Coral reefs
- ✓ Beaches
- ✓ Seaport
- ✓ Oil refineries
- ✓ Coastal harbours

The rift valley

What is a rift valley?

- ✓ A rift valley is along depression on the earth's surface between two escarpments.

How was a rift valley formed?

- ✓ By faulting.

What do call the steep sides of a rift valley?

- ✓ Escarpments

What are escarpments?

- ✓ Escarpments are steep sides of a rift valley.

Give any three characteristics of a rift valley.
- ✓ It is long.
- ✓ It is wide.
- ✓ It has steep sides called escarpments.

Note: The Great Rift Valley starts from **Syria** in Asia continent and runs through Jordan valley, the **Gulf of Aqaba**, Red sea, Ethiopia, Kenya, Tanzania and ends at **Beira** in Mozambique.

Name four arms/branches of the Rift Valley.
- ✓ Ethiopian arm.
- ✓ Malawian arm.
- ✓ Western arm.
- ✓ Eastern arm.

Western Arm
- ✓ This arm of rift valley passes through Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi, and Tanzania down Mozambique.

Name the major escapement of the Western arm of rift valley.
- ✓ Albertine escarpment

Eastern arm
- ✓ It passes through Kenya and Tanzania down to Mozambique.

Name the longest arm of a rift valley.
- ✓ Eastern arm

Name the major escapement of the Eastern arm of rift valley
- ✓ Mau escapement.

Ethiopian arm
- ✓ The Ethiopian arm of a rift valet originates from the Ethiopian highlands to the Red sea.

Name the major escapement of the Ethiopian arm of rift valley.
- ✓ Mega escapement

Malawian arm
- ✓ It passes through Malawi to Mozambique.

Mention any four economic activities carried out in the rift valley.
- ✓ Farming
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Bee keeping
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Fishing
- ✓ Animal rearing

Name the major economic activity carried out in rift valley.
- ✓ Bee keeping

Give any four problems faced by people living in a rift valley.
- ✓ Landslides
- ✓ Soil erosion
- ✓ High temperatures
- ✓ Poor transport

What causes high temperatures in rift valley?
- ✓ Low altitude

How is a rift valley economically important to people?
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It has lakes which act as fishing grounds.
- ✓ It is used for bee keeping.
- ✓ It has fertile soils for crop growing.
- ✓ It has pasture for animal rearing.

LAKES OF AFRICA

- ✓ A lake is a big depression filled with water on the earth's surface.
- ✓ A lake is a mass of water in a basin.

Mention any four examples of lakes in Africa.

Lake	***Country***
Lake Volta	Ghana
Lake Kariba	Zambia
Lake Chad	Chad
Lake Nasser	Egypt
Lake Amboseli	Kenya
Lake Malawi	Tanzania
Lake Tanganyika	Tanzania
Lake Victoria	Uganda

Note:

- ✓ Lake Victoria is the largest lake in Africa.
- ✓ Lake Tanganyika is the longest lake in Africa.
- ✓ Lake Volta is the largest manmade lake in Africa.
- ✓ Lake Ngami is a seasonal lake found in Kalahari Desert.
- ✓ Lake Amboseli is an example of seasonal lake in Africa.

Why Lake Victoria is called an inter-territorial lake?

- ✓ Lake Victoria is shared by three countries in the same region.

How does Lake Victoria help to promote trade in East Africa?

- ✓ It has inland ports that handle imports and exports of countries in East Africa.
- ✓ It promotes water transport.

Name any two inland ports found on Lake Victoria

Uganda	***Kenya***	***Tanzania***
✓ Port Bell	✓ Port Kisumu	✓ Port Mwanza
✓ Port Jinja	✓ Port Assembo	✓ Port Musoma
✓ Port Bukakata		✓ Port Bukoba

Note: The teacher draws a map showing inland ports on lake Victoria.

State the types of lakes in Africa.

- ✓ Rift valley lakes
- ✓ Fresh water lakes
- ✓ Lava dammed lakes
- ✓ Ox-bow lakes
- ✓ Crater lakes
- ✓ Caldera lakes
- ✓ Lagoon
- ✓ Manmade lakes

Freshwater lakes

What are freshwater lakes?

- ✓ Fresh water lakes are lakes which were formed by down warping.

How were freshwater lakes formed?

- ✓ By down warping or sagging.

Note: *Freshwater lakes are also called;*

- ✓ Plateau lakes
- ✓ Natural lakes
- ✓ Down warped lakes
- ✓ Depression lakes
- ✓ Basin lakes

Mention the examples of freshwater lakes in Africa

- ✓ Lake Victoria
- ✓ Lake Kyoga
- ✓ Lake Wamala
- ✓ Lake Amboseli
- ✓ Lake Chad
- ✓ Lake Bagweru

State any four characteristics of freshwater lakes.

- ✓ They are wide.
- ✓ They are shallow.
- ✓ They have fresh water.
- ✓ They are irregular in shape.
- ✓ They have swampy surroundings.
- ✓ They have both outlets and inlets.

Rift valley lakes

- ✓ Rift valley lakes are lakes found within the rift valley.

How were rift valley lakes formed?

- ✓ By faulting.

Examples of rift valley lakes found in the following arms of rift valley.

Eastern arm of rift valley	*Western arm of rift valley*	*Ethiopian arm of rift valley*
✓ Lake Turkana (Rudolf)	✓ Lake Albert	Lake Abaya
✓ Lake Natron	✓ Lake Edward	Lake Stephanie
✓ Lake Baringo	✓ Lake Tanganyika	lake Shala
✓ Lake Manyara	✓ Lake Kivu (In Rwanda)	Lake Chamo
✓ Lake Rukwa		Lake Awasa
✓ Lake Naivasha		Lake Koka
✓ Lake Eyasi		
✓ Lake Magadi		
✓ Lake Nakuru		

- ✓ ***Note*:** Lake Malawi is the meeting point of both Western and Eastern arms of rift valley.

State any four characteristics of rift valley lakes.

- ✓ They are long.
- ✓ They are deep.
- ✓ They are narrow.
- ✓ They have salty fish.
- ✓ They have no outlets.
- ✓ They have salty rocks.
- ✓ They have salty water.
- ✓ They have irregular shapes.

Give two reasons why rift valley lakes have salty water.

- ✓ They have no outlets.
- ✓ They have salty rocks underground.

Give one reason why fishing is not commonly carried out on rift valley lakes.

- ✓ Rift valley lakes have salty water which does not favour fish.

Volcanic lakes

- ✓ These lakes are formed as a result of volcanicity (volcanic activities)

Give three types of volcanic lakes.

- ✓ Caldera lakes.
- ✓ Crater lakes.
- ✓ Lava dammed lakes

Lava dammed lakes

✓ These are lakes which were formed when lava blocks the flow of a river.

Give four examples of lava dammed lakes in Africa.

✓ Lake Bunyonyi (deepest lake in Uganda)
✓ Lake Mutanda
✓ Lake Bulera
✓ Lake Mlehe
✓ Lake Kivu (in Rwanda)

Caldera lakes

What is a caldera?

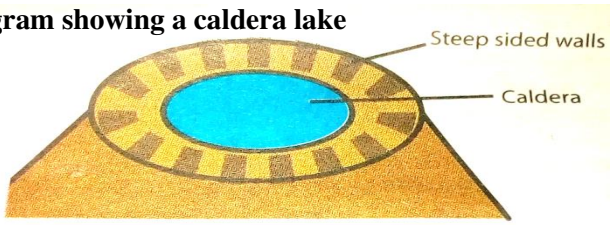
✓ A caldera is a large round depression created on top of a dead volcano **(*extinct volcano*).**

Note: When water collects in a caldera, it becomes a caldera lake.

Mention any four examples of caldera lakes in Africa.

Lake	**Country**
Lake Menengai	Kenya
Lake Ngozi	Kenya
Lake Longonot	Kenya
Mt. Meru caldera lake	Tanzania
Lake Ngorongoro	Tanzania

A diagram showing a caldera lake



Crater lakes

✓ These are lakes formed when water collects in a V – shaped depression on top of a dead volcano **(*extinct volcano*).**

✓ ***Note***: Crater lakes were formed by volcanicity (volcanic activities)

State any two characteristics of crater lakes.

✓ They are salty.
✓ They steep walls.
✓ They have no outlets.

Give one reason why crater lakes have salty water.

✓ They steep walls without outlets.

Mention any four examples of crater lakes in Africa.

✓ Lake Katwe (largest)
✓ Mt. Elgon crater lake
✓ Mt. Muhavura crater lake
✓ Lake Nyungu
✓ Lake Nyamsingiri
✓ Lake Kyamwiga
✓ Lake Nyamuragire
✓ Lake Kirambe
✓ Lake Sera
✓ Lake Kitimba
✓ Lake Panjan
✓ Lake Paradise

Note: Lake Katwe is the only Crater Lake found on the floor of rift valley in Africa.

Ox - bow lakes
- ✓ These are lakes formed by river meandering.
- ✓ They are commonly found on meandering rivers on the **lower course.**

State any three characteristics of Ox – bow lakes.
- ✓ They are formed by river meandering.
- ✓ They have oval shape.
- ✓ They are shallow.
- ✓ They sometimes seasonal.

Give any four examples of ox-bow lakes.
- ✓ Lake Utange on R. Rufiji
- ✓ Lake Gambi on R. Tana
- ✓ Lake Manzala on the Nile delta in Egypt
- ✓ Lake Kanyaboli on R. Yala in Kenya.
- ✓ Lake Shakababo (Kenya)

Give any four examples of rivers with Oxbow lakes in Africa
- ✓ R. Semliki
- ✓ R. Yala
- ✓ R. Tana
- ✓ R. Rufiji

Manmade lakes
- ✓ These are lakes formed by people.

Give any three human activities that may lead to formation of manmade lakes.
- ✓ Dam construction.
- ✓ Brick making.
- ✓ Digging ponds.

State any two characteristics of manmade lakes.
- ✓ They are shallow
- ✓ They are seasonal

Mention any four examples of manmade lakes in Africa.

Lake	Country
✓ Kabaka's lake	Uganda
✓ Kajjansi Lake	Uganda
✓ Namugongo Lake	Uganda
✓ Lake Volta	Ghana
✓ Lake Nasser	Egypt
✓ Lake Kariba	Zambia
✓ Lake Kainji	Nigeria

Lagoons
- ✓ A lagoon is a small lake separated from the sea by sand or mud.

How were lagoon lakes formed?
- ✓ By marine deposition.

- ✓ ***Note:*** Most lagoon lakes are formed on the West Africa Coast.

Give one reason why are there many lagoon lakes in West Africa.
- ✓ West Africa has an indented coastline.

Give one reason why East Africa has no lagoon lakes.
- ✓ East Africa has a smooth coastline

Give any four examples of lagoon lakes in Africa.
- ✓ Lovu lagoon
- ✓ Langebaan lagoon
- ✓ Fafa lagoon
- ✓ St. Lucia lagoon

Give any four economic importance of lakes to people.
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income
- ✓ They are source of fish which is sold for income.
- ✓ Lakes are sources of water for industrial use
- ✓ Lakes are sources of water for irrigation.
- ✓ Some lakes are sources of minerals which are sold for income
- ✓ Lakes are used for water transport.
- ✓ Lakes act as fishing grounds.

Give any three social importance of lakes to people.
- ✓ Lakes are used for reaction through swimming
- ✓ Lakes help in rain formation
- ✓ They provide water for domestic use.
- ✓ They are homes of marine animals
- ✓ They provide fish which is eaten as food.

How are lakes politically important to African Countries?
- ✓ Some lakes act as natural border between countries.

State any three dangers of lakes to people living near them.
- ✓ They harbor dangerous wild animals which attack people.
- ✓ They are breeding places of disease vectors.
- ✓ Death of people due to water accidents.

State any four problems faced by lakes in Africa.
- ✓ Water pollution
- ✓ Overfishing
- ✓ Water weeds
- ✓ Silting
- ✓ Prolonged drought which increases the rate of evaporation

Give two reasons why some lakes are shallow
- ✓ Due to silting.
- ✓ Some lakes are swampy.

How do lakes help to promote agriculture?
- ✓ They help in rain formation which supports crop growing.
- ✓ They provide water for irrigation.
- ✓ Lake shores have fertile soils for crop growing.

How do lakes promote industrial growth?
- ✓ Lakes provide water which is used as raw materials in water processing industries.
- ✓ Lakes provide water which is used for cooling engines of machines.
- ✓ Lakes provide fish which is used in fishing processing industries.

Give any two factors that attract people to live near lakes and rivers.
- ✓ Presence of fertile soils that favour crop growing.
- ✓ Presence of favourable climate.
- ✓ Presence of economic opportunities like fishing.

Why water transport is difficult on some lakes in Africa.
- ✓ Some lakes have water weeds.
- ✓ Some lakes have big rocks.
- ✓ Some lakes are shallow.
- ✓ Some lakes are narrow.
- ✓ Some lakes have dangerous water animals.

State any four economic activities carried out on lakes.
- ✓ Fishing
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Water transport
- ✓ Mining

RIVERS OF AFRICA
What is a river?
- ✓ A river is a mass of flowing water.

Name two types of rivers.
- ✓ Permanent rivers.
- ✓ Seasonal rivers.

Permanent rivers
What are permanent rivers?
- ✓ Permanent rivers are rivers which have water throughout the year.
- ✓ Permanent rivers are rivers which flow throughout the year.

Name the major permanent rivers in Africa.
- ✓ River Nile
- ✓ River Zambezi
- ✓ River Limpopo
- ✓ River Senegal
- ✓ River Ruvuma
- ✓ River Congo
- ✓ River Orange
- ✓ River Volta
- ✓ River Niger

Seasonal rivers
What are seasonal rivers?
- ✓ Seasonal rivers are rivers which dry up during dry season.
- ✓ Seasonal rivers are rivers which flow mainly during rainy season.

Give any two seasonal rivers in Africa.
- ✓ River Agago in Uganda
- ✓ River River Turkwel in Kenya

River Nile
Name the longest river in Africa.
- ✓ River Nile

Name the source of river Nile.
- ✓ Lake Victoria

In which country do we find upper Nile?
- ✓ Uganda

In which district do we find the source of river Nile?
- ✓ Jinja

Name the mouth of river Nile.
- ✓ Mediterranean Sea.

Note: River Nile forms a delta as it enters Mediterranean Sea.
- ✓ River Nile is the only river in Africa that flows northwards.

Name two lakes drained by river Nile in Uganda.
- ✓ Lake Kyoga
- ✓ Lake Albert

Name three parts/sections of river Nile.
- ✓ Victoria Nile *(from Lake Victoria to Lake Albert)*
- ✓ Albert Nile *(from Lake Albert to Nimule town)*
- ✓ White Nile *(from Nimule town to Mediterranean Sea)*

Give two reasons why River Nile flows northwards.
- ✓ Uganda's plateau tilts northwards.
- ✓ Its source is on a higher altitude than northwards.

Name the place where the Blue Nile River joins the White Nile River.
- ✓ Khartoum in Sudan

Name the biggest main tributary of River Nile.
- ✓ River Achwa

Name the source of the Blue Nile?
- ✓ Lake Tana

In which country is Lake Tana found?
- ✓ Ethiopia

How was Lake Tana formed?
- ✓ By faulting

The Nile Valley
- ✓ This is the area drained by river Nile, its tributaries and distributaries.

Nile valley countries
- ✓ These are countries drained by river Nile, its tributaries and distributaries.

Name four examples of Nile valley countries.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ South Sudan
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ Egypt

How is River Nile important to Nile valley countries?
- ✓ It is used for water transport.
- ✓ It provides water for irrigation.
- ✓ It provides water for domestic use.
- ✓ It provides water for industrial use.
- ✓ It helps to generates Hydroelectric Power.
- ✓ It acts as a fishing ground.

Why are some parts of River Nile not used for water transport?
- ✓ Some parts of River Nile have waterfalls.
- ✓ Some parts of River Nile have water rapids.
- ✓ Some parts of River Nile have sudds.

River Congo
- ✓ River Congo is found in the equatorial rainforests of DRC.
- ✓ It pours its water into **Atlantic Ocean.**

Give three reasons why river Congo carries largest volume of water.
- ✓ It has many river tributaries.
- ✓ Its source is in the region which receives heavy rainfall.
- ✓ It flows through the equatorial rainforests which receive heavy rainfall.

River Niger
- ✓ River Niger pours its water into Atlantic Ocean.

Name the river the only river in Africa that flows gradually to the Sea.
- ✓ River Niger.

Name the main tributary of River Niger.
- ✓ River Benue

How does river Niger delta economically important to Nigeria?
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring foreign currency.
- ✓ It has many oil wells.

Why Niger delta is densely populated?
- ✓ It has fertile soils for crop crowing.
- ✓ It provides water for irrigation.
- ✓ It has many job opportunities.
- ✓ It has many oil wells.
- ✓ It has favourable climate.

River Zambezi
- ✓ River Zambezi is the fourth longest river in Africa.
- ✓ Lake Kariba was formed as a reservoir along Zambia and Zimbabwe border.

River Volta
- ✓ River Volta rises from Burkina Faso and flows southwards through Ghana and drains its water into the Atlantic Ocean.

River Ruvuma
- ✓ It flows along Tanzania and Mozambique border.
- ✓ River Ruvuma pours its water into Indian Ocean.

How is river Ruvuma politically important to Tanzania and Mozambique?
- ✓ It forms a natural border between Tanzania and Mozambique.

River Orange
- ✓ It has its source in Drakensberg Mountains in South Africa.
- ✓ It pours its water into the Atlantic Ocean.

Give two reasons why river orange flows westwards.
- ✓ It is due to low altitude towards west
- ✓ South Africa's land tilts westwards

Major rivers and their main tributaries in Africa

Country	*River*	*Main tributary (ies)*	*Source*	*Nature of mouth*
Uganda	Nile	Blue Nile River Achwa River Atbara River Bahr-el-Ghazel	Lake Victoria	Delta
Nigeria	Niger	Benue	Fouta Djallon	Delta
Zambia	Zambezi	Linyonti R. Kafue	Angola plateau	Delta
DRC	Congo	Ubangi Kasai Lualaba Lukaga	L.Tanganyika	Estuary
South Africa	Limpopo	Korocodile Enruvuhu Magalawena Suna Singuendeze	Highveld	Estuary
Senegal	Senegal	Bafing Bakoye Faleme	Fouta Djallon	Estuary
Ghana	Volta	WhiteVolta Black Volta Oti	Burkina Faso	Estuary
South Africa	Orange	Vaal Modder Caledon	Drakensburg Mountains	Estuary

Name the rivers that pour their water into Lake Victoria.

- ✓ River katonga
- ✓ River kagera
- ✓ River Nzoia
- ✓ River Yala
- ✓ River Mara
- ✓ River Sio

Mention the rivers in Africa that pour their water into Atlantic Ocean.

- ✓ River Orange
- ✓ River Volta
- ✓ River Senegal
- ✓ River Niger
- ✓ River Gambia
- ✓ River Cuanza

Outline the rivers in Africa that pour their water into Indian Ocean.

- ✓ River Ruvuma
- ✓ River Tana
- ✓ River Juba
- ✓ River Rufiji
- ✓ River Limpopo
- ✓ River Zambezi

Name the rivers in Africa that end in delta.

- ✓ River Nile
- ✓ River Niger
- ✓ River Zambezi
- ✓ River Tana
- ✓ River Rufiji
- ✓ River Semliki

Mention the rivers in Africa that end with an estuary.

- ✓ River Congo
- ✓ River Limpopo
- ✓ River Senegal
- ✓ River orange
- ✓ River Volta

Dams found on different rivers in Africa.

Country	*River*	*Dam*	*Uses of dam*
Uganda	River Nile	Nalubale dam Bujagali dam Kiira dam Karuma dam Murchison Falls dam	To generate HEP
Sudan	River Nile	Sennar dam Rossiers dam	To generate HEP
Egypt	River Nile	Aswan high dam	To generate HEP
Zambia	R. Zambezi	Kariba dam Kafue dam	To generate HEP
Mozambique	R. Zambezi	Cabora Bossa dam	To generate HEP For irrigation
DRC	River Cong	Nziro dam Inga dam	To generate HEP
Kenya	River Tana	SevenForks scheme Grand Falls dam Kamburu dam Masinga dam Kindaruma dam	To generate HEP Irrigation Irrigation Irrigation Irrigation
South Africa	River Orange	Vaal dam Verwoed dam	To generate HEP
Ghana	River Volta	Akosombo dam Mpongo dam	To generate HEP
Nigeria	River Niger	Kainji dam	To generate HEP
Tanzania	R. Pangani	Pangani dam	To generate HEP
	River Rufiji	Mtera dam Kilombero valley Kidatu dam	Irrigation
Note: HEP means Hydroelectric Power.			

Parts of a River

- ✓ Parts of a river are also called ***stages/courses of a river.***

How many stages does a river have?

- ✓ Three stages

Name three stages of a river.

- ✓ The upper stage.
- ✓ The Middle stage.
- ✓ The lower Stage.

The upper stage

- ✓ This is the first stage of a river course.
- ✓ It is also called ***youthful stage*** **or** ***torrent stage.***

State any four characteristics of the upper stage of rive.

- ✓ The river flows very fast.
- ✓ It forms a V-shaped valley.
- ✓ It flows over a steep slope
- ✓ It has waterfalls.
- ✓ It has water rapids.
- ✓ It has gorge.
- ✓ It has cataracts.

Note: *Hydroelectric Power is usually generated at this stage of a river.*

Give any three importance of the upper stage of a river.
- ✓ It has waterfalls which help to generate HEP.
- ✓ It has Waterfalls and rapids which attract tourists.
- ✓ It favours water sporting games e.g. rafting.

The middle stage
- ✓ The middle stage of a river is also called ***valley/ mature stage of a river.***

State any four characteristics of the middle course of a river.
- ✓ The river flows gently.
- ✓ The river begins to meander.
- ✓ The river begins to form flood plains.
- ✓ The river forms a U- shaped valley.
- ✓ It encourages lateral erosion.

Give any two importance of the middle stage of a river.
- ✓ It is most suitable for navigation.
- ✓ It is used for fishing.

The lower stage
- ✓ It also called the ***senile stage*** or ***plain stage.***
- ✓ This refers to the old or weak stage of a river on its course.
- ✓ It opens as the river is almost ending its journey to the lake, sea or ocean.

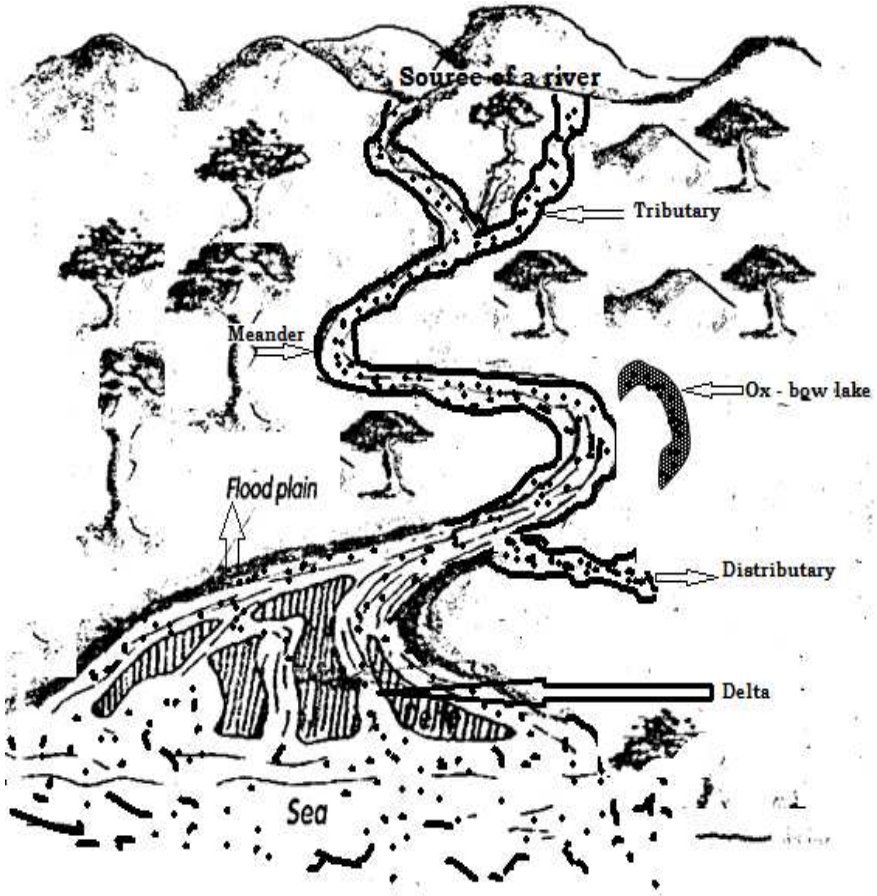
State any four characteristics of the lower stage of a river.
- ✓ The river flows slowly.
- ✓ The river meanders.
- ✓ The river forms flood plains.
- ✓ The river forms Ox-bow lakes.
- ✓ Some river form deltas.

Name two features formed at the lower stage of a river.
- ✓ Delta
- ✓ Ox – bow lakes

Give any four importance of the lower stage of a river.
- ✓ It has fertile soils which favour crop growing.
- ✓ It has an ox – Bow Lake which attracts tourists.
- ✓ It forms a delta which attracts tourists.
- ✓ It favours fishing

Give the reason why there is no generation of HEP at the lower stage of a river
- ✓ There are no features which help to generate HEP.

A diagram showing a river course



Give the meaning of the following terms.

- ✓ ***Source of a river***: *Is a point where a river starts to flow.*
- ✓ ***Mouth of a river****: Is a point where a river pours/discharge its water.*
- ✓ ***An estuary:*** *Is a wide mouth of a river.*
- ✓ ***River confluence:*** *Is a point where two or more rivers meet*
- ✓ ***A tributary:*** *Is a small river that joins the main river*
- ✓ ***A distributary:*** *Is a small river that branches off from the main river*
- ✓ ***A delta:*** *Is a point where the river divides into several rivers.*
- ✓ ***A cataract:*** *Is a large waterfall.*
- ✓ ***A rapid:*** *is a small waterfall.*
- ✓ ***A drainage system/basin*** *is an area of land drained by a river, its tributaries and its distributaries.*
- ✓ ***River basin****. Is an area drained by a river, its tributaries and distributaries.*

State the importance of rivers.

- ✓ They provide water for domestic use.
- ✓ They provide water for industrial use.
- ✓ They provide water for irrigation.
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They act as fishing grounds.
- ✓ They help in rain formation.
- ✓ They are used for recreation.
- ✓ Some are used to generate HEP.
- ✓ Some rivers are used for water transport.
- ✓ Some rivers form natural borders between countries.

Mention any four economic activities carried out on lakes and rivers.
- ✓ Fishing
- ✓ Farming
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Transport
- ✓ Trading
- ✓ Mining

State any four problems faced by rivers in Africa.
- ✓ Water weeds.
- ✓ Water pollution.
- ✓ Silting.
- ✓ Poor fishing methods.
- ✓ Dumping of wastes.
- ✓ Prolonged droughts.

Give any four problems caused/associated with rivers.
- ✓ Floods
- ✓ Soil erosion due to floods.
- ✓ They harbor dangerous water animals.
- ✓ They are breeding places of disease vectors.
- ✓ They make transport difficult.

State any four possible solutions to the above problems.
- ✓ Avoid cultivating near rivers to control floods.
- ✓ Flood banks should be built to floods.
- ✓ Avoid overloading boats.
- ✓ Avoid drunkenness while travelling on water.
- ✓ Lifejackets should be used to while sailing or swimming to avoid drowning.

Why is water transport difficult on some rivers?
- ✓ They have waterfalls.
- ✓ They have water rapids.
- ✓ They have water weeds.
- ✓ They are narrow.
- ✓ Some rivers have rocks.
- ✓ They harbor dangerous water animals.
- ✓ Some rivers are shallow.

Give two reasons why most rivers have their sources from mountains.
- ✓ Some mountains have melting snow on their top.
- ✓ Mountains receive heavy rainfall.

Give any two ways physical features influence the people's life
- ✓ Plains favour cattle keeping.
- ✓ People carry out fishing on water bodies.
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income to people.
- ✓ Physical features earn income to people through tourism.
- ✓ Mountains and highlands have fertile soils for crop growing.
- ✓ Physical features help in rain formation.

How do physical features influence animals?
- ✓ Some physical features such as lakes and rivers are homes of water animals.
- ✓ Some physical features such as lakes and rivers provide water to animals.
- ✓ Physical features help in rain formation which supports plant growth which provides pasture to animals.

BASINS

What is a basin?
- ✓ A basin is a large low lying land between plateaus and highlands.

How were basins formed?
- ✓ By faulting.

Note: When water collected in some basins, lakes were formed.

Give any four examples of basins in Africa.

- ✓ The Nile basin
- ✓ The Victoria basin
- ✓ The Congo basin
- ✓ The Chad basin
- ✓ The Zambezi basin

Give any four importance of basins.

- ✓ They are a source of fish.
- ✓ They help in rain formation
- ✓ Basins attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They have fertile soils which favour crop growing.

MAP SHOWING MAJOR RIVERS IN AFRICA



The energy development in Africa

What are energy resources?

- ✓ Energy resources are things that provide power used in industries.

Mention the major sources of power in Africa.

- ✓ Running water
- ✓ Hot springs
- ✓ Natural gas
- ✓ Wind
- ✓ Coal
- ✓ Uranium
- ✓ Animal wastes
- ✓ The sun

Match sources of power to their produced energy correctly.

Source of power/energy	***Energy***
Running water	Hydroelectric Power
Hot springs	Geo-thermal power
The sun	Solar power
Wind	Wind power
Uranium	Atomic power
Animal wastes	Biogas
Natural gas, coal and crude oil	Thermal power

Solar energy
- ✓ Solar energy is got from them the sun.

Name the type of energy commonly used by the people who live in deserts.
- ✓ Solar energy

Why solar energy is commonly used by people who live in desert areas?
- ✓ Desert areas receive plenty of sunshine which generates solar energy.

Name the place in Uganda where wind energy is used for pumping water.
Karamoja sub region

Hydroelectric Power (*hydroelectricity*)
- ✓ HEP is a type of power got from running water.

Mention any four HEP projects along river Nile in Uganda.
- ✓ Nalubale power dam.
- ✓ Bujagali power dam.
- ✓ Kiira power dam.
- ✓ Buagaye power dam.

State any four reasons why potential production of HEP has not been well exploited in Africa.
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour.
- ✓ Low levels of technology.
- ✓ Shortage of funds.
- ✓ Low levels of industrialization.
- ✓ Low consumption of power.

Rural Electrification
- ✓ Rural Electrification is the programme of extending electricity in rural areas.

Which ministry is responsible for carrying out rural electrocution in Uganda?
- ✓ Ministry of Energy and Mineral Development.

Why is the government of Uganda carrying out rural electrocution?
- ✓ To develop rural areas.
- ✓ To control deforestation.
- ✓ To prevent rural-urban migration.
- ✓ To promote urban-rural migration.
- ✓ To promote industrialization in rural areas.

State any two problems facing the programme of rural electrification.
- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Corruption among its officials.
- ✓ Stealing of electric materials such as wires.

Advantages of solar energy over HEP
- ✓ Solar energy is cheaper than HEP.
- ✓ Solar energy conserves the environment unlike HEP.

Why is the government of Uganda encouraging people to use environmental friendly forms of energy?
- ✓ To conserve the environment.

Give any three ways of reducing the costs of hydroelectricity at home.
- ✓ By switching off light during daytime.
- ✓ By switching off electric appliances when they are not in use.
- ✓ By using energy saving bulbs.
- ✓ By using it sparingly.

Multipurpose river projects in Africa

What are multipurpose river projects?

✓ These are dams constructed on major rivers to serve more than one purpose **of development**.

Give one reason why multipurpose river are called so.

✓ They serve several different purposes of development to people.

Note: During the construction of the multi – purpose river projects, artificial lakes are formed. The manmade lakes serve as a source of water for irrigation.

Name the multi-purpose river projects in Africa

Multi-purpose river project	***River***	***Country***
Akosombo dam	River Volta	Ghana
Aswan high dam	River Nile	Egypt
Nalubale dam	River Nile	Uganda
Kainji dam	River Niger	Nigeria
Cabora Bossa dam	River Zambezi	Mozambique
Kariba dam	River Zambezi	Zambia
Inga dam	River Congo	DRC
Seven Forks dam	River Tana	Kenya

Give any four examples of Multi-purpose River projects in Africa.

✓ Aswan high dam project.
✓ Volta river project.
✓ Kainji river project.
✓ Kariba river project.
✓ Cabora Bossa dam project.
✓ Tana river project

State the factors considered before setting up a multipurpose river project

✓ Presence of constant flow of water.
✓ Presence of strong rocks.
✓ Presence of reliable market.
✓ Presence of labour.
✓ Presence of narrow steep sided gorge (***deep valley***)

Give one reason why multipurpose projects are built in areas with strong rocks.

✓ To give them strong foundation.

Give any four importance of multipurpose river projects.

✓ They control floods on rivers.
✓ They generate HEP.
✓ They store water for irrigation.
✓ They act as fishing grounds.
✓ They are source of income through tourism.

Give any four disadvantages of multipurpose river projects

✓ They lead to displacement of people.
✓ They are expensive to start and manage.
✓ They lead to destruction of natural environment.
✓ People get diseases like bilharzia.

State any two activities carried out on multi-purpose river projects.

✓ Tourism
✓ Irrigation farming
✓ Fishing
✓ Generation of HEP

Name the features on a river that help in generating HEP.

✓ Waterfall
✓ Water rapids
✓ Gorge
✓ Cataracts

What is a waterfall?

- ✓ A waterfall is an area where water flows over a vertical drop in the course of a river.

Give any two importance of waterfalls.

- ✓ They help to generate HEP
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.

How are turbines useful in generating Hydroelectric Power?

- ✓ Turbines are turned by fast flowing water to generate HEP.

The Aswan High dam

In which country is the Aswan High Dam found?

- ✓ Egypt

On which river was the Aswan High dam built?

- ✓ River Nile.

Name the largest dam built along river Nile.

- ✓ Aswan High dam.

Mention the manmade lake found behind the Aswan High Dam.

- ✓ Lake Nasser.

Of what importance is the above lake?

- ✓ It provides water the Aswan High dam.
- ✓ It acts as a fishing ground.
- ✓ It is use for water transport.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.

Give four reasons why the Aswan High dam was built.

- ✓ To generate HEP.
- ✓ To store water for irrigation.
- ✓ To generate income through tourism.
- ✓ To control floods on river Nile.
- ✓ To control wastage of water.
- ✓ To promote fishing.
- ✓ To enable Egypt to grow enough food for her large population.
- ✓ To create reliable water sources for both domestic and industrial use.

Of what importance is the Aswan High Dam to the people of Egypt?

- ✓ It generates HEP.
- ✓ It generates income through tourism.
- ✓ It helps to control floods on river Nile.
- ✓ It provides water for irrigation.
- ✓ It provides water for domestic use
- ✓ It provides water for industrial use.
- ✓ It supports fishing on Lake Nasser.
- ✓ It has increased the chances of multi-cropping.
- ✓ It has led to reclamation of desert area.

Give two disadvantages of the Aswan High Dam.

- ✓ It has reduced the volume of water in the Nile delta.
- ✓ The controlled flow of water by the dam has increased the loss of water.

Note: Aswan High dam was built in 1970 by ***Russian engineers.***

Renewable energy resources

✓ Renewable energy resource is type of energy that can be replaced when has got used up.

Give any four examples of renewable energy resources.

✓ Hydroelectricity
✓ Solar power
✓ Wind power
✓ Geo-thermal power

Non-renewable energy resources

✓ Non-renewable energy resource type of energy that cannot be replaced when has got used up.

Give any three examples of non-renewable energy resources.

✓ Biogas
✓ Nuclear energy
✓ Thermal energy

Fishing in Africa

✓ Fishing is the extraction of fish from water bodies.

Under which ministry is fishing in Uganda?

✓ Ministry of Agriculture, Animal industry and Fisheries.

Under which type of industry does fishing belong?

✓ Primary industry.

Name any four fishing grounds in Africa.

✓ Lakes
✓ Rivers
✓ Ponds
✓ Dams
✓ Swamps
✓ Oceans
✓ Steams
✓ Oceans
✓ Seas

What name is given to a place where fish can be reared?

✓ Fish ponds

What is aquaculture?

✓ Aquaculture is the rearing of fish in fish ponds.

Give two types of fish.

✓ Fresh fish
✓ Marine fish

What is fresh fish?

✓ Fresh fish is type of fish got from lakes and rivers.

What marine fish?

✓ Marine fish is type of fish got from oceans and seas.

Give any four examples of fish caught in Africa.

✓ Tilapia
✓ Mud fish
✓ Nile perch
✓ Million fish

Name the largest fish caught in Ugandan lakes

✓ Nile perch

Name the commonest type of fish caught in East Africa.

✓ Tilapia fish

Give any four modern methods of fishing used in Africa.

✓ Gillnetting.
✓ Trawling method.
✓ Drifting method.
✓ Purse method.
✓ Long line fishing.
✓ Seine fishing.

Give any four traditional/local methods of fishing used in Africa.
- ✓ Use of fishing hooks.
- ✓ Use of fishing baskets.
- ✓ Use of fishing spears.
- ✓ Use of panga.
- ✓ Use of fishing traps.
- ✓ Use of fishing rods.

Mention any three bad fishing methods used in Africa.
- ✓ Fish poisoning.
- ✓ Fishing young fish.
- ✓ Use of under sized fishing nets.

Give three reasons why the government is discouraging bad fishing methods.
- ✓ To avoid fishing under sized fish.
- ✓ To avoid extinction of fish.
- ✓ To avoid water pollution.

State any four ways the government of Uganda is preventing bad fishing methods.
- ✓ By educating people about the dangers of using bad fishing methods.
- ✓ By teaching people about the advantages of good fishing methods.
- ✓ By enforcing strict laws against bad fishing methods.
- ✓ By deploying army on lakes.

Give any two modern methods of preserving fish.
- ✓ Freezing
- ✓ Tinning/canning

Mention any three traditional/local methods of preserving fish.
- ✓ By smoking.
- ✓ By salting.
- ✓ By sun drying.

Which method of fish preservation is dangerous to the environment?
- ✓ Smoking method

Mention the problems facing the fishing industry.
- ✓ Over fishing.
- ✓ Water pollution.
- ✓ Water weeds
- ✓ Price fluctuation of fish.
- ✓ Pirates
- ✓ Dangerous water animals.
- ✓ Bad weather e.g. storms.
- ✓ Poor storage of fishing facilities.
- ✓ Poor fishing methods.
- ✓ Poor transport and communication.
- ✓ Poor fish preservation methods.
- ✓ Poor fishing methods.
- ✓ Shortage of capital.
- ✓ Shortage of market for fish.
- ✓ Shortage of labour.
- ✓ Competition for market of fish.

State the possible solutions to the problems facing the fishing industry.
- ✓ Teaching people better fishing methods.
- ✓ Teaching people better fish preservation methods.
- ✓ Teaching people about the dangers of polluting water bodies.
- ✓ Teaching people about the dangers of bad fishing methods.
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws against bad fishing methods.
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws on dumping of wastes into water bodies
- ✓ Constructing better roads.
- ✓ Creating ready market for fish.
- ✓ Constant removing of water hyacinth by the government.
- ✓ Relocating dangerous water animals to restricted areas.

How is water hyacinth (Sudds) dangerous to fishing industry?
- ✓ It tears fishing nets.
- ✓ It pollutes water.
- ✓ It kills fish.
- ✓ It causes accidents during water transport.
- ✓ It harbours dangerous water animals like crocodiles.
- ✓ It makes landing of water vessels difficult.
- ✓ They make water transport difficult.

Give any three ways of removing water hyacinth on water bodies.
- ✓ By using machines.
- ✓ By removing water hyacinth using hands.
- ✓ By using insects to eat the water weeds.

Give one reason why chemicals are not used to remove water hyacinth from water bodies.
- ✓ Chemicals contaminate water.
- ✓ Chemicals cause death of fish.

Give any four causes of accidents on water bodies.
- ✓ Strong wind.
- ✓ Water waves.
- ✓ Over loading boats.
- ✓ Big rocks in water bodies

Give any four importance of fishing industry.
- ✓ It diversifies the economy.
- ✓ It is a source of food e.g. fish.
- ✓ It is a source of foreign exchange.
- ✓ It is a source of employment to people.
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling fish.
- ✓ It earns revenue to the government through tourism.

THE CLIMATE OF AFRICA

What is climate?
- ✓ Climate is the average weather condition of a place recorded for a long period of time.

What is weather?
- ✓ Weather is the state of atmosphere of a place recorded for a short period of time.

Give one way climate different from weather.
- ✓ Climate is recorded for a long period of time while weather is recorded for a short period of time.

Name two elements/aspects of climate that influence human settlement (Human activities)
- ✓ Rainfall
- ✓ Temperature

Give any four conditions (types) of weather.
- ✓ Rainy
- ✓ Sunny
- ✓ Cloudy
- ✓ Humid
- ✓ Foggy
- ✓ Windy
- ✓ Misty

Match weather instruments to their functions correctly.

Instrument	*Function (use)*
Rain gauge	Measures rainfall.
Wind vane	Shows the direction of wind.
Wind sock	Shows the direction where wind is blowing to. Measures the strength of wind.
Barometer	Measures air pressure.
Hygrometer	Measures humidity.
Anemometer	Measures the speed of wind.
Sunshine recorder	Measures sunshine.
Ceilometers	Measures thickness of clouds.
Thermometer	Measures temperature.
Weather cock	Measures the direction of wind.

How is a wind vane different from a wind sock from showing direction?

- ✓ A wind vane shows the direction where wind is blowing from while a wind sock shows the direction where wind is blowing to.

Name three places where a wind sock is found.

- ✓ Airport
- ✓ Airstrip
- ✓ Airfield

Why is a windsock found in the above places?

- ✓ To help the pilot to know the direction of wind.
- ✓ To help the pilot to know the strength of wind.

Why is a windsock painted bright colours?

- ✓ To be easily seen by the pilots in a far distance.

Give the meaning of the following terms as relate to climate and weather.

- ✓ ***Climatology:*** Climatology is the scientific study of climate.
- ✓ ***Climatologist:*** A climatologist is a person who studies climate.
- ✓ ***Meteorology:*** Meteorology is the scientific study of weather.
- ✓ ***Meteorologist*****:** A meteorologist is a person who studies weather.
- ✓ ***Isobars:*** Isobars are lines drawn on a map joining places with the same air pressure.
- ✓ ***Contours:*** Contours are line drawn on a map joining places with the same altitude.
- ✓ ***Isohels:*** Isohels are lines drawn on a map joining places with the same sunshine.
- ✓ ***Isonephs:*** Isonephs are lines drawn on a map joining places with the same cloud cover.
- ✓ ***Isotherms*****:** Isotherms are line dawn on a map joining places with the same temperatures.
- ✓ ***Isohyets:*** Isohyets are lines drawn on a map joining places with the same rainfall.
- ✓ ***Weather station****:* is a place where elements of weather are measured and recorded.
- ✓ ***A climatic zone*** is an area which receives the same amount of rainfall and temperature.

Summary:

Isobars	*Air pressure*
Contours	*Altitude*
Isohels	*Sunshine*
Isonephs	*Cloud cover*
Isotherms	*Temperature*
Isohyets	*Rainfall*

Weather forecasting

What is weather forecasting?

- ✓ Weather forecasting is the foretelling of weather changes.
- ✓ Weather forecasting is the predicting of weather changes.

How is weather forecasting important to a farmer?

- ✓ It helps a farmer to plan for his/her garden activities.
- ✓ It helps a farmer to know when to plant and harvest crops.
- ✓ It helps a farmer to avoid bad weather conditions.

How is weather forecasting important to travelers?

- ✓ It helps them to avoid bad weather conditions.
- ✓ It helps them to know the type of clothes to wear.

How is weather forecasting important to pilots?

- ✓ It helps pilots to avoid bad weather conditions.
- ✓ It helps pilots to know when to fly an aeroplane.

How is windy weather important to people?

- ✓ Helps to dry wet clothes.
- ✓ Helps to turn wind mills.
- ✓ Helps farmers to winnow their cereal crops.
- ✓ Helps to sail boats.

How does sunny weather influence people's activities?

- ✓ It dries farmers' harvested crops.
- ✓ Farmers prepare land for crop growing,
- ✓ Farmers harvest their ready crops.

How does wet/rainy weather affect people?

- ✓ People plant their crops
- ✓ People wear heavy clothes

Mention the weather disasters/hazards that affect people negatively.

- ✓ Floods
- ✓ Drought
- ✓ Landslides
- ✓ Mudslides
- ✓ Hailstones

Floods

- ✓ Floods refer to a large amount of water covering a flat low lying area.

Give the causes of floods.

- ✓ Heavy rainfall.
- ✓ Poor drainage system.
- ✓ Swamp drainage.
- ✓ Silting of swamps.

State the effects of floods.

- ✓ Floods cause death of people.
- ✓ Floods destroy property.
- ✓ Floods lead to spread of water borne diseases.
- ✓ Floods destroy crops which causes famine.
- ✓ Floods destroy transport routes.

Give any four ways of preventing floods

- ✓ Building drainage channels.
- ✓ Conserving swamps.
- ✓ Teaching people about the dangers of swamp drainage.
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws against swamp drainage.

Give any four ways of helping people affected by floods (flood victims)
- ✓ Giving them food.
- ✓ Giving them clothes.
- ✓ Giving them shelter.
- ✓ Giving them medical care.
- ✓ Resettling them to safer area.

Landslides
- ✓ Landslides refers to the missive falling of soil and rocks from the slopes of mountains to the ground.

Give any three causes of landslides.
- ✓ Heavy rainfall
- ✓ Over cultivation on mountain slopes.
- ✓ Deforestation on mountain slopes.

Give any four ways of controlling landslides.
- ✓ Planting trees on mountain slopes.
- ✓ Discouraging over cultivation on mountain slopes.
- ✓ Discouraging deforestation on mountain slopes.
- ✓ Discouraging human settlement on mountain slopes.
- ✓ Teaching people about the dangers of settling on mountain slopes.

How does afforestation help to control landslides?
- ✓ Trees roots hold soil particles together.

Name the ministry responsible for people affected by landslides and floods in Uganda.
- ✓ Ministry of Disaster Preparedness and Refugees.

Drought
- ✓ A drought is a long period of sunshine without rainfall.

Mention any three human activities that cause of drought.
- ✓ Deforestation.
- ✓ Swamp drainage.
- ✓ Over cultivation.

Give any four dangers of drought.
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Shortage of water
- ✓ Shortage of pasture for animals.
- ✓ Soil infertility
- ✓ Poor crop yields

State any four ways of preventing drought.
- ✓ By practicing afforestation.
- ✓ By practicing re-afforestation.
- ✓ By practicing agro-forestry
- ✓ By enforcing strict laws against deforestation.
- ✓ By enforcing strict laws against swamp drainage.

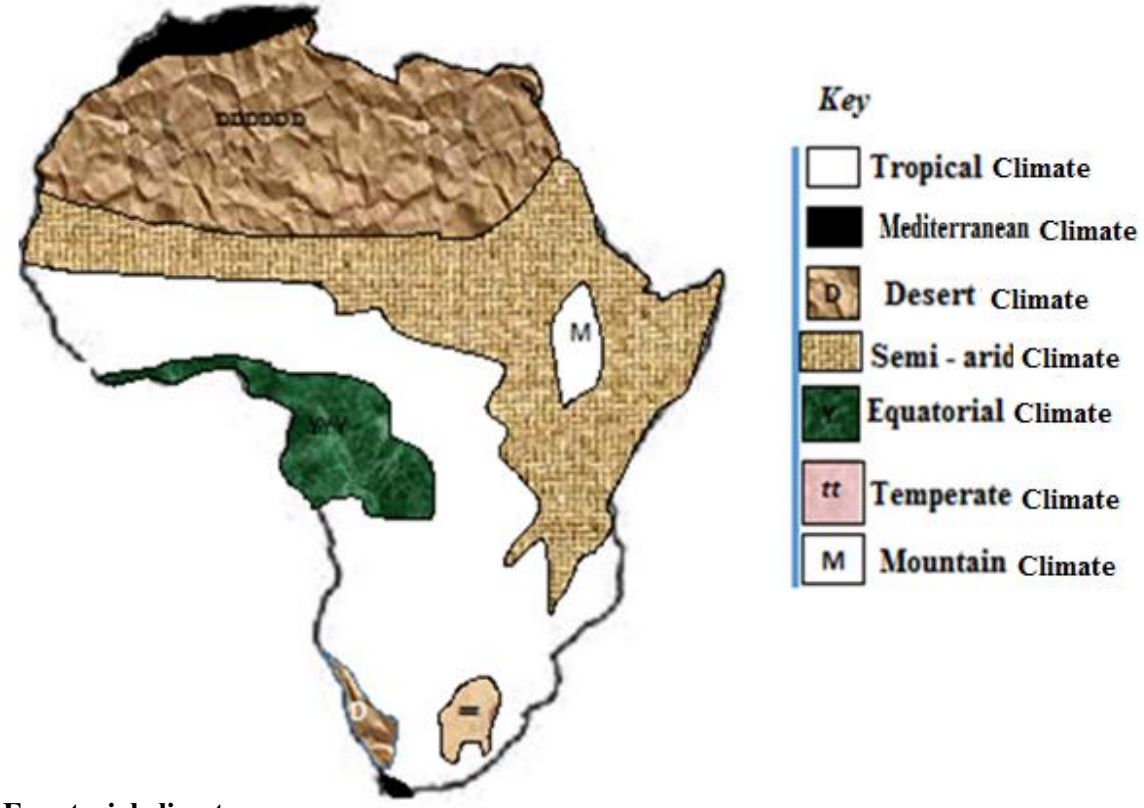
Hailstones
- ✓ Hailstones are small stone balls of ice which fall like rain.

Give any four dangers of hailstone
- ✓ It destroys crops.
- ✓ It kills people.
- ✓ It kills animals.
- ✓ It leads to soil erosion.

Climatic zones of Africa/types of climate

Equatorial climate
Tropical climate
Mediterranean climate
Temperate climate
Desert/semiarid climate
Mountain climate

A MAP SHOWING CLIMATIC REGIONS OF AFRICA



Equatorial climate

Which type of climate is described as hot and wet throughout the year?

- ✓ Equatorial climate.

Describe equatorial climate.

- ✓ It is hot and wet throughout the year.

Give any four characteristics of equatorial climate.

- ✓ There is no complete dry month.
- ✓ It is hot and wet throughout the year.
- ✓ It receives convectional type of rainfall throughout the year (*It ranges between* ***1500mm – 25000mm****)*
- ✓ It has high temperature throughout the year(***27^0C and above***)
- ✓ It receives double maxima of rainfall.
- ✓ It is covered within tropical rainforests.

Name the countries that experience equatorial climate in Africa.

- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ DRC
- ✓ Cameroon
- ✓ Gabon
- ✓ Sierra Leone
- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Liberia
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Central African Republic

Note: **The equatorial region covers areas such as: -**

- ✓ The coastal areas of East Africa.
- ✓ The southern coastal area of West Africa.
- ✓ The west coast of Madagascar.
- ✓ The Lake Victoria basin of east Africa.

Mention the areas in East Africa that experience equatorial climate.

- ✓ Kenyan highlands.
- ✓ Shores of Lake Victoria.
- ✓ Kalangala
- ✓ Buvuma
- ✓ Entebbe

Human activities carried out in the equatorial climatic regions

- ✓ Lumbering
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Charcoal burning
- ✓ Farming
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Hunting
- ✓ Latex tapping

Name the main human activity carried out in the equatorial climatic regions.

- ✓ Lumbering

Give four factors that favour lumbering in the equatorial regions.

- ✓ Presence of hardwood trees.
- ✓ Presence of ready market for timber.
- ✓ Presence of capital.
- ✓ Good government policy.

Outline the crops grown in equatorial climatic regions.

- ✓ Cocoa
- ✓ Coffee
- ✓ Bananas
- ✓ Oil palm
- ✓ Rubber
- ✓ Sugarcanes

Why is equatorial climate described as hot and wet throughout the year?

- ✓ It receives high temperature and heavy rainfall.
- ✓ It receives an average rainfall of 1500mm – 2500mm.
- ✓ It experiences a temperature range of 27^0 C and above.

Give one reason why equatorial climate is always hot?

- ✓ The sun is always over the equator which crosses equatorial climatic regions.

State any one reason why equatorial regions receive double maxima of rainfall.

- ✓ The sun overheads the equatorial regions two times a year.

Mention any four reasons why equatorial regions receive heavy rainfall

- ✓ Presence of thick forests
- ✓ Presence of many water bodies
- ✓ Constant high temperatures
- ✓ Closeness of the equator
- ✓ High humidity rate

Give any four problems faced by people living in the equatorial regions

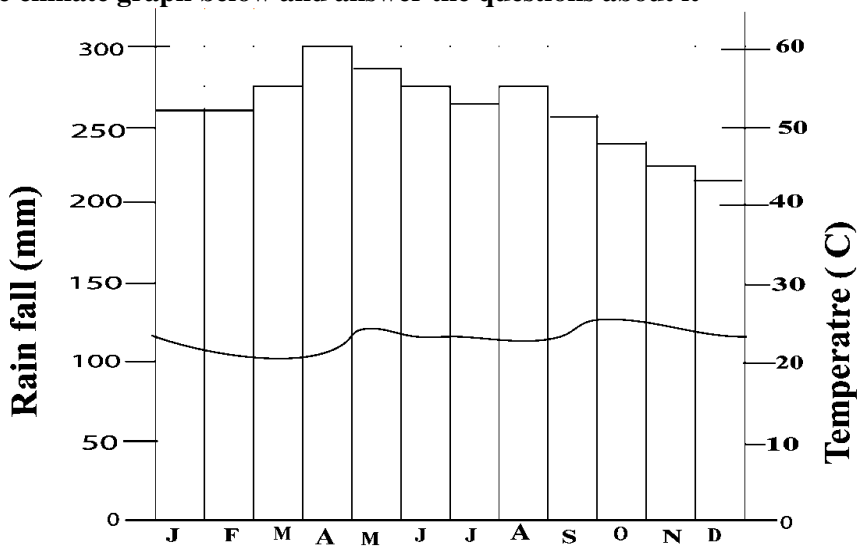
- ✓ Civil wars
- ✓ Landslides
- ✓ Tropical diseases.
- ✓ Floods due to heavy rainfall
- ✓ Poor transport and communication.

Study the table below and answer the questions that follow.

Month	**J**	**F**	**M**	**A**	**M**	**J**	**J**	**A**	**S**	**O**	**N**	**D**
Temp(^{0}C)	**30**	**31**	**31**	**31**	**30**	**29**	**28**	**28**	**29**	**29**	**29**	**30**
R/F(mm)	**2500**	**3500**	**3250**	**3000**	**2130**	**350**	**2500**	**1500**	**275**	**375**	**380**	**2000**

a) In which month is the heaviest rainfall received?
b) Name any two countries that experience the above type of climate.
c) What is the annual temperature range?
d) In which month does the above region received the least amount of rainfall?
e) What is the annual temperature range of the above region?
f) Mention any two crops that grow well in the above climatic region.
g) What is the total annual rain fall?
h) State the relationship between rainfall and temperature.

Study the climate graph below and answer the questions about it



1 What is the type of climate is described above?
2 What is the highest amount of rainfall recorded at the above place?
3 Mention any two months with the same amount of rain fall.
4 How much rain fall was recorded in March?
5 What was the temperature recorded in June?
6 Mention ant two countries that experience the above type of climate in Africa

TEMPERATE CLIMATE

- ✓ Temperate climate is also called ***Highveld climate.***
- ✓ It is found in the plateau of South Africa.
- ✓ This region covers the Eastern parts of South Africa to the East of Drakensberg ranges.
- ✓ These parts are called **Velds.**

How is temperate climate described?

- ✓ It is hot and wet throughout the year.

Name three places in South Africa which experience temperate climate.

- ✓ Transvaal
- ✓ Orange Free State } **Provinces**
- ✓ Natal

State any four characteristics of temperate climate.

- ✓ It is hot and wet throughout the year.
- ✓ It is found in areas outside the tropics.
- ✓ The temperature ranges between 10^{o}C to 27^{o}C
- ✓ The rainfall received ranges between 400mm – 780mm.
- ✓ It experiences two climatic seasons which include; the hot and rainy summers and the cool – dry winters.

Name three countries that experience temperate climate in Africa.

- ✓ South Africa
- ✓ Eswatini
- ✓ Lesotho

Mention any four human activities carried out in temperate climatic region in Africa.

- ✓ Crop growing
- ✓ Livestock farming
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Lumbering

Name the type of sheep reared in temperate climate/Highveld climate.

- ✓ Merino sheep

Name the place in Highveld where merino sheep rearing is carried out on a large scale
- ✓ Great Karoo

State any three reasons why the temperature region favours sheep rearing.
- ✓ Due to the presence of cool weather conditions.
- ✓ Due to presence of abundant grass for the sheep.
- ✓ The region is free from tsetse flies.

Name the place in Highveld where maize growing is done on a large scale.
- ✓ Maize Triangle.

Give any three examples of crops grown in the temperate climate region in Africa.
- ✓ Wheat
- ✓ Maize
- ✓ Fruits

Name any three examples of fruits grown in temperate climatic regions.
- ✓ Lemons
- ✓ Oranges
- ✓ Barley

Study the climatic table below and use it to answer questions that follow.

Month	**J**	**F**	**M**	**A**	**M**	**J**	**J**	**A**	**S**	**O**	**N**	**D**
Temp(^{0}C)	**25**	**25**	**24**	**22**	**20**	**18**	**18**	**19**	**20**	**22**	**23**	**24**
Rainfall(mm)	**110**	**120**	**130**	**90**	**60**	**30**	**30**	**40**	**80**	**125**	**125**	**125**

a) Which type of climate is shown on the table above?
b) What is the relationship between rainfall and temperature?
c) Mention any two countries that experience the above type of climate in Africa.
d) Calculate the temperature annual range.
e) Name the major economic activity carried out the climatic region above.
f) State any two characteristics of the type of climate shown on the table above.

TROPICAL CLIMATE
- ✓ Tropical climate is also called Tropical continental climate.

How is tropical climate described?
- ✓ It is described as dry and wet throughout the year.

Which type of climate covers the largest part of Africa?
- ✓ Tropical climate.

State any four characteristics of tropical climate.
- ✓ It is dry and wet throughout the year.
- ✓ It has two seasons in a year.
- ✓ It receives convectional type of rainfall. (***1,000mm – 1500mm in a year***).
- ✓ It has high temperatures throughout the year. (***Between 26°C to 32°C***).

Name the countries that experience tropical climate in Africa.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Zambia
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Malawi
- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Mali
- ✓ Chad
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ Gambia
- ✓ Burkina Faso

Give any four human activities carried out in tropical regions.

- ✓ Crop growing
- ✓ Lumbering
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Hunting
- ✓ Trade
- ✓ Fishing
- ✓ Nomadic pastoralism
- ✓ Wildlife conservation
- ✓ Livestock farming
- ✓ Industrialization

Mention any four examples of crops grown in tropical regions

- ✓ Maize
- ✓ Oil palm
- ✓ Rubber
- ✓ Cassava
- ✓ Coffee
- ✓ Tobacco
- ✓ Groundnuts
- ✓ Tea
- ✓ Beans
- ✓ Sorghum
- ✓ Millet

Give any three examples of the animals reared in tropical regions.

- ✓ Cattle
- ✓ Goats
- ✓ Sheep

Why is livestock practiced in the tropical region?

- ✓ There is plenty of pasture for animals.

Give any three examples of Nomadic tribes in the tropical region.

- ✓ The Fulani in Nigeria
- ✓ The Masai in Kenya
- ✓ Nandi in Kenya
- ✓ The Karimojong in Uganda

State any four problems faced by people living in tropical regions.

- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Prolonged drought
- ✓ Tropical diseases
- ✓ Shortage of water during dry season
- ✓ Wildfires during dry seasons
- ✓ Floods during rainy seasons

What do we call the period when tropical regions receive rainfall?

- ✓ Equinox

Give two characteristics of equinox.

- ✓ High temperatures.
- ✓ Heavy rainfall is received.

Give the meaning of the following words.

a) Equinox - *is the period when the sun overheads the equator.*
b) Summer solstice - *is the period when the sun overheads the tropic of cancer.*
c) Solstice - *is the period when the sun overheads the tropic of Capricorn.*

When the sun is overheads the following lines of latitude?

a) **Equator** *– 21st march and 23rd September.*
b) Tropic of Cancer – *21 June***.**
c) Tropic of Capricorn *– 22nd December.*

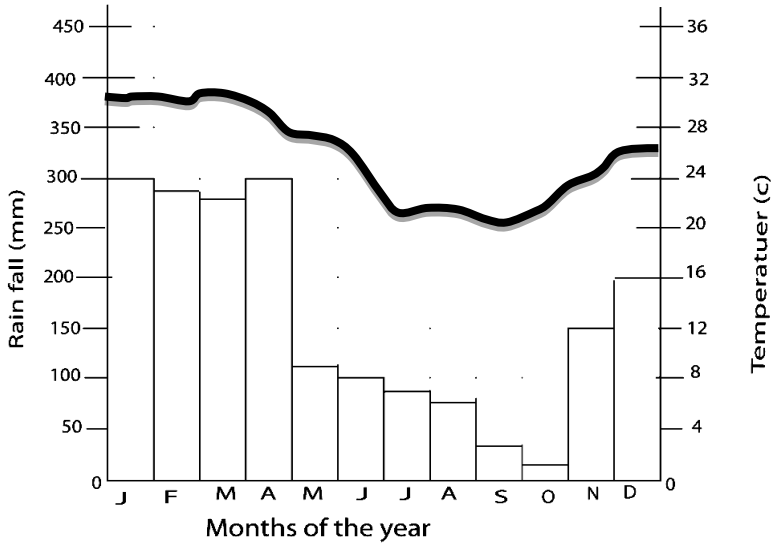
Note: *The Northern hemisphere will have the summer season while the Southern hemisphere will have winter during equinox.*
The Southern hemisphere will have summer while the Northern hemisphere will have winter when tropic of Capricorn overheads the sun.

Study the table below showing rainfall and temperature in Ghana.

Month	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp(^{0}C)	25	27	35	32	35	33	28	27	27	26	26	25
Rainfall(mm)	125	110	100	20	19	-	-	-	10	15	80	125

a) Which type of climate is shown on the table above?
b) Which months did not receive rainfall at all?
c) Name the driest month.
d) What is the relationship between temperature and rainfall of the region shown on the table above?
e) Calculate the temperature range of the area.
f) Which month received the heaviest rainfall?
g) Name two crops that can be grown in the area.
h) Give one characteristics of the above climate.

Study the graaph below and use it to answer the questions that follow.



a) Name the climatic region shown in the graph above
b) Mention any four countries the experience type of climate in Africa
c) Name the month that received the highest amount of rainfall.
d) What is the relationship between temperature and rainfall on the graph above?
e) Name the driest month.
f) State any two characteristics of the climate shown on the table above.

MEDITERRANEAN CLIMATE

✓ Mediterranean climate is also called ***warm temperate western climate.***

Which type of climate is described as hot and dry summer or warm and wet winters?

✓ Mediterranean climate.

State any four characteristics of Mediterranean climate.

✓ It experiences hot and dry summers.
✓ It experiences warm and wet winters.
✓ It received moderate rainfall in winter season.
✓ It receives maximum sunshine in summer seasons.
✓ It has four seasons.

Name four seasons experienced in Mediterranean climatic region.

✓ Summer
✓ Winter
✓ Spring
✓ Autumn

Describe the following terms

- ✓ ***Summer****: The hottest / warmest season between spring and autumn.*
- ✓ ***Winter****: The coldest seasons between spring and autumn.*
- ✓ ***Spring****: The season between summer and winter when plants grow.*
- ✓ ***Autumn****: The season of the year between summer and winter when leaves change colour and the weather becomes coldest.*

Name the prevailing winds that bring rainfall to Mediterranean climatic regions.

- ✓ Westerly winds

Note:

- ✓ Winter temperature lie between 4^{o}c and 10^{o}c.
- ✓ Summers are warm and hot and almost dry with temperature between 10^{o} to 17^{o}c.
- ✓ Mediterranean climate covers areas surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.
- ✓ It is found along the North Western side of the coast.
- ✓ It also covers the South Western Coast (tip of the Coast) of South Africa.

Name the African countries that experience Mediterranean climate.

- ✓ Morocco
- ✓ Tunisia
- ✓ South Africa
- ✓ Algeria
- ✓ Libya

Mention any four human activities carried out in Mediterranean climatic regions.

- ✓ Citrus fruit growing
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Trade

Mention the major economic activity carried out in the Mediterranean climatic regions.

- ✓ Citrus fruit Growing.

Outline examples of citrus fruits grown in Mediterranean climatic regions

- ✓ Oranges
- ✓ Lemons
- ✓ Apples
- ✓ Oats
- ✓ Barely
- ✓ Pineapples
- ✓ Grapes
- ✓ Limes
- ✓ Passion fruits
- ✓ Peach
- ✓ Strawberries
- ✓ Mangoes
- ✓ Dates

Apart from citrus fruits, name other two types of crops grown in Mediterranean climatic regions.

- ✓ Fodder crops
- ✓ Cereal crops

Give two examples of fodder crops.

- ✓ Lucerne plant
- ✓ Alfalfa

A table showing Mediterranean climate.

Temp (^{o}C)	**25**	**22**	**20**	**30**	**29**	**24**	**20**	**24**	**32**	**37**	**39**	**35**
Rainfall (mm)	**20**	**16**	**18**	**25**	**26**	**24**	**22**	**25**	**30**	**34**	**36**	**20**
Months	**J**	**F**	**M**	**A**	**M**	**J**	**J**	**A**	**S**	**O**	**N**	**D**

Desert and semi desert climate

Which type of climate is described as hot and dry throughout the year?

✓ Desert climate.

Note: Desert climate is also called **arid climate.**
Semi desert climate is also called **semi-arid climate.**

State any four characteristics of desert/semi-arid climate.

✓ It has high temperatures.
✓ The skies are clear without clouds.
✓ It is hot and dry throughout the year.
✓ Days are very hot and nights are very cool.
✓ It receives little or no rainfall throughout the year.

Why is desert climate described as hot and dry throughout the year?

✓ It receives little or no rainfall.
✓ It experiences high temperatures.

Give one reason why desert areas are very hot during day and very cool during night.

✓ At night there are no clouds which prevent evaporation like during day.

State one reason why Deserts experience very high temperatures during the day

✓ The rays of the sun strike the earth direct with no cloud to reduce their temperatures.

Give one reasons why the nights are very cold in Deserts

✓ There are no clouds at night to stop the heat from rising into the sky.

Why do desert areas receive little or no rainfall?

✓ They receive dry winds which do not carry moisture.
✓ They are found in the rain shadow.

Name the countries which experience desert in Africa.

✓ Libya
✓ Egypt
✓ Mali
✓ Algeria
✓ Sudan
✓ Tunisia
✓ Morocco
✓ Western Sahara
✓ Namibia
✓ Botswana

Name any four examples crops that grow well in semi-arid areas in Africa.

✓ Millet
✓ Sorghum
✓ Wheat
✓ Simsim
✓ Barley
✓ Olives
✓ Dates

State any one reason why millet and sorghum grow well in semi-arid areas.

✓ They are resistant to dry climatic conditions.

What is climatic change?

✓ Climatic change is the constant variation in weather patterns for a long time.

Give any four indicators of climatic change.

✓ Desertification
✓ Global warming
✓ Drought
✓ Heavy rainfall

Mention any four causes of climatic change.

✓ Deforestation
✓ Industrialization
✓ Bush burning
✓ Swamp drainage
✓ Pollution of atmosphere

State any four effects of climatic change.
- ✓ Famine due to prolonged drought.
- ✓ Shortage of water due to prolonged drought.
- ✓ Shortage of pasture for animals due to prolonged drought.
- ✓ Soil infertility due to prolonged drought.
- ✓ Floods due to heavy rainfall.
- ✓ Landslides due to heavy rainfall.

Mention the ways of controlling climatic change in Africa.
- ✓ Practicing afforestation
- ✓ Practicing reaforestation
- ✓ Practicing agro forestry.
- ✓ Controlling lumbering.
- ✓ Discouraging deforestation.
- ✓ Discouraging swamp drainage.
- ✓ Treating both domestic and industrial wastes before releasing them in the atmosphere.

What is desertification?
- ✓ Desertification is the process by which pieces of land becomes dry and unable to support plant growth.

Give four causes of desertification.
- ✓ Bush burning
- ✓ Deforestation
- ✓ Swamp drainage
- ✓ Global warming

State any four dangers of desertification.
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Prolonged draught.
- ✓ Shortage of water.
- ✓ Shortage of pasture for animals.
- ✓ Soil infertility

What is a desert?
- ✓ A desert an area which receives little or no rainfall throughout the year.

Give two Causes of Deserts.
- ✓ Dry winds
- ✓ Cold ocean currents

Mention any four characteristics of deserts.
- ✓ They receive little or no rainfall.
- ✓ They are dry and hot throughout the year.
- ✓ They have very hot temperatures.
- ✓ The skies are clear.

Name three Deserts of Africa

Desert	***Direction***
Sahara desert	Northern Africa.
Kalahari desert	Borders the Namib Desert to the East.
Namib Desert	South Western Coast of Africa

Give two types of deserts.
- ✓Continental deserts.
- ✓Marine deserts.

Give two examples of continental deserts in Africa.
- ✓ Sahara desert
- ✓ Kalahari desert

Mention one example of marine desert in Africa.
- ✓ Namib desert

Name the largest and hottest desert in Africa.
- ✓ Sahara desert

Name the prevailing winds which are responsible for the dry conditions in Sahara desert.
- ✓ Harmattan winds.

Name the latitude that crosses in the middle of Sahara desert.
- ✓ Tropic of cancer.

Name the main source of water in the East of Sahara desert
- ✓ River Nile

Apart from River Nile, mention other source of water in Sahara desert.
- ✓ Oases

Give the Reasons why River Nile is referred to as the life blood of Egypt and Sudan.
- ✓ The Egyptians and Sudanese use the waters of the Nile for irrigation.
- ✓ The Egyptians and Sudanese use the waters of the Nile for domestic use.

What is an oasis?
- ✓ An oasis is a fertile area with water and vegetation in a desert.

Mention the main source of water in desert areas.
- ✓ Oases

How are oases important to people living in desert area?
- ✓ Oases provide water for irrigation.
- ✓ Oases provide water for domestic use.
- ✓ Oases provide pasture for animals.
- ✓ Oases attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ Oases are used for scientific and study research

Give any four reasons why people living in desert areas stay near oases.
- ✓ To get water for irrigation.
- ✓ To get water for domestic use.
- ✓ To get pasture for animals.
- ✓ Oases attract tourists who bring income.

What are sand dunes?
- ✓ Sand dunes are large heaps of sand found in a desert.

What causes sand dunes?
- ✓ Strong wind that blow in a desert.

How are sand dunes important to people living in desert areas?
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They provide sand for building houses.

Give any two disadvantages of sand dunes.
- ✓ They destroy people's houses.
- ✓ They make road transport difficult.

Mention any three tourist attractions found in desert areas.
- ✓ Sand dunes
- ✓ Desert climate
- ✓ Oases

Mention any four human activities carried out in desert areas.
- ✓ Cattle keeping
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Irrigation farming

Mention the economic activity carried out by most people in the Desert regions.
- ✓ Cattle keeping.

Mention any four examples of animals reared in desert regions.
- ✓ Camels
- ✓ Cattle
- ✓ Sheep
- ✓ Goat

Where in the Desert is farming practiced?
- ✓ Near the Oases.

How Libya made irrigation possible in the Desert
- ✓ Libya constructed a manmade River to provide water for irrigation.

State the problems faced by people living in desert areas.
- ✓ Shortage of water
- ✓ Coldness at night
- ✓ High temperatures
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Prolonged drought
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Shortage of pasture for their animals

Name the major type of transport used in desert areas
- ✓ Animal transport.

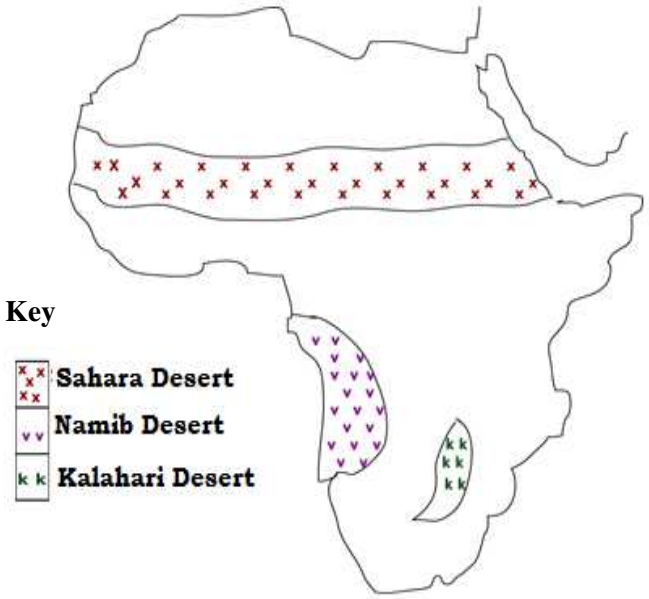
Mention the main means of transport used in desert areas
- ✓ Camel

State the reasons why a camel is able to survive/live in desert areas.
- ✓It has strong eyelids
- ✓It has a fatty hump for energy
- ✓It has flat feet for easy movement
- ✓It takes a long time without taking water
- ✓It has a lot of fur which prevent heat loss

Give any four uses of a camel to people
- ✓ It is used for transport
- ✓ It is a source of meat
- ✓ It is a source of milk.
- ✓ It is a source of income when sold
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.

Why are camels referred to as the ships of the Desert?
- ✓ They are used for transport in the desert.

THE MAP SHOWING THE MAJOR DESERTS OF AFRICA

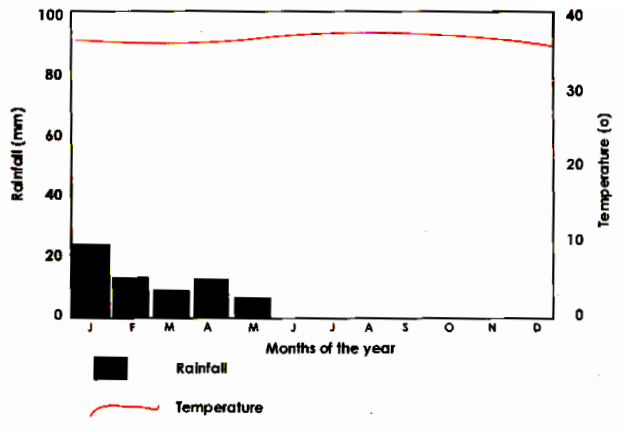


Study the table below and use it to answer the questions that follow.

Temp (°c)	38	39	37	36	34	35	38	39	37	37	39	35
Rainfall (mm)	21	15	7	3	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	20
Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D

a) Name the type of climate shown on the table above.
b) What is the relationship between temperature and rainfall?
c) Mention months which did not receive any rainfall.
d) Name any two countries that experience the above type of climate in Africa.
e) Which months received the same amount of rainfall?
f) Mention any three months without any rainfall.
g) Give one cause of a Desert in an area.
h) State any two characteristic of Desert Climate.
i) How are Oases important to the people in Desert regions?
j) Mention any two tourist attractions in the Desert Region.
k) Why is a camel referred to as a ship in desert regions?

Study the graph below and use it to answer the questions about it



a) Name the type of climate above in the table
b) What is the relationship between temperature and rainfall?
c) Mention months which did not receive any rainfall at all
d) Name any two countries that experience the above type of climate in Africa

What is global warming?

✓ Global warming is the constant rise in the world's temperatures.

Give any four causes of global warming.

✓ Deforestation
✓ Bush burning
✓ Industrialization
✓ Swamp drainage
✓ Charcoal burning
✓ Emission of greenhouse gases.

Give four examples of greenhouse gases.

✓ Carbon dioxide
✓ Carbon monoxide
✓ Methane
✓ Nitrous oxide

Mention the ways of reducing global warming.

✓ By practicing afforestation.
✓ By practicing agro forestry.
✓ By practicing reafforestation.
✓ By discouraging deforestation.
✓ By discouraging swamp drainage.
✓ By discouraging bush burning.
✓ By controlling lumbering.

Give one way trees control global warming.

✓ Trees absorb carbon oxide in the atmosphere.

Give any three dangers of global warming.

✓ It destroys ozone layers.
✓ It causes drought.
✓ It reduces on the amount of rainfall.

Mountain climate

✓ Mountain climate is also called ***Montane*** or ***highland climate.***

How is Mountain climate described?

✓ Wet and cool throughout the year.

Which type of climate is experienced around mountainous and highland areas?

✓ Mountain climate.

Which side of mountain receives rainfall?

✓ Windward side.

Give one reason why windward side of the mountain receives rainfall.

✓ It receives moist winds.

Which type of rainfall is received around mountainous and highland areas?

✓ Relief rainfall

Name the side of the mountain which does not receive rainfall?

✓ Leeward side

State any one reason why leeward side of the mountain does not receive rainfall.

✓ Leeward side receives dry winds

How do mountains influence/modify climate.

✓ Mountains help in rain formation

How do mountains help in rain formation?

✓ Mountains force moist winds to rise and form rain.

State the economic activity carried out on the leeward side of the mountain.

✓ Cattle keeping

Name any four crops grown on the windward side of the mountain.
- ✓ Beans
- ✓ Bananas
- ✓ Potatoes
- ✓ Coffee

Name any three crops gown on the leeward side of the mountain.
- ✓ Millet
- ✓ Sorghum
- ✓ Wheat

A table showing mountain climate

Month	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
R/f (mm)	100	100	180	440	510	150	100	100	70	200	270	70
Temp	13	14	15	15	13	10	11	13	14	14	14	14

State the factors that affect/influence the climate of Africa.
- ✓ Altitude
- ✓ Latitude
- ✓ Relief
- ✓ Ocean currents
- ✓ Prevailing winds
- ✓ Global warming
- ✓ The distance from the water bodies
- ✓ Human activities
- ✓ Nature of vegetation

What is altitude?
- ✓ Altitude is height of a place above the sea level.

Name the instrument that is used to measure altitude.
- ✓ Altimeter

How does altitude affect climate of an area?
- ✓ Areas on a low altitude are hotter than areas on high altitude.
- ✓ Areas on high altitude are cooler than areas on a low altitude.

Why is Entebbe cooler than Kampala?
- ✓ Entebbe is on a higher altitude than Kampala

Give one reason why Moroto is hotter than Kabale.
- ✓ Moroto is on a lower altitude than Kabale.

Why do areas near the Indian Ocean experience high temperatures?
- ✓ They are on a low altitude.

What is latitude?
- ✓ Latitude is the distance of a place from the equator North or South.

Give three ways latitude affect the climate of an area.
- ✓ Areas near the equator are hotter than areas far from the equator.
- ✓ Areas near the equator receive heavier rainfall compared to areas far from the equator.
- ✓ Areas near the equator experience higher temperatures compared to places far from the equator.

Give one reason why areas near the equator receive heavy rainfall.
- ✓ They experience high temperatures which increase the rate of evaporation and transpiration.

Give one reason why areas near the equator are very hot in the months of March and September.
- ✓ It is the period when the sun overheads the equator.

How does distance from water bodies affect the climate of an area?
- ✓ Areas near larger water bodies receive a lot of rainfall compared to areas far from water bodies.

Give one reason why areas near water bodies receive a lot of rainfall.
- ✓ Winds that blow across large the water bodies carry a lot of moisture which rise to form rain.

State any one reason why areas far from water bodies do not receive a lot of rainfall.
- ✓ Wind that blows from land towards the sea is dry hence they do not bring more rainfall.
- ✓ It is due to high rate of evaporation.

Give one reason why areas far from water bodies do not receive a lot of rainfall?
- ✓ Winds that blow from land towards the sea are dry hence they do not bring rainfall.

What is relief?
- ✓ Relief is the general appearance of the landscape.

How does relief affect climate of an area?
- ✓ Windward side of the mountain is cooler than the leeward side.
- ✓ Windward side of the mountain receives rainfall unlike leeward side

Give one way ocean currents affect the climate of Africa.
- ✓ Warm ocean currents bring rainfall to Africa unlike cold ocean currents.

How do prevailing winds affect the climate of Africa?
- ✓ Warm winds bring rainfall to Africa unlike dry winds.

How does nature of vegetation affect the climate of an area?
- ✓ Areas with thick vegetation receive plenty of rainfall compared to areas with little or no vegetation.

How do human activities affect the climate of an area?
- ✓ Deforestation reduces on the amount of rainfall received in an area while afforestation modifies the climate.

Give the human activities that affect the climate negatively.
- ✓ Deforestation,
- ✓ Bush burning
- ✓ Swamp drainage.
- ✓ Industrialization
- ✓ Over cultivation

Give one way deforestation affect the climate of an area.
- ✓ Deforestation reduces on the amount of rainfall received in an area.
- ✓ Deforestation causes global warming.
- ✓ Desertification causes desertification.

Give the human activities that modify the climate.
- ✓ Afforestation
- ✓ Re- afforestation
- ✓ Agro-forestry

How does afforestation help modify climate of an area?
- ✓ Trees help in rain formation through the process of transpiration.

What is an ocean current?
- ✓ An ocean current is a large mass of water which flows in particular direction on the surface of an ocean.

State any three characteristics of an Ocean current.
- ✓ It is cold when flows from cold areas to warm areas.
- ✓ It is warm when flows from warm areas to cold areas.
- ✓ It flows in particular direction on the surface of an ocean.

Give any four causes of ocean currents.
- ✓ Prevailing winds.
- ✓ Rotation of the earth.
- ✓ The effect of the equator.
- ✓ Changes in temperature and salinity.

Give two types of ocean currents.
- ✓ Warm ocean currents.
- ✓ Cold ocean currents.

Warm ocean current
- ✓ These are currents that blow from the warm areas to cold areas.

How do warm ocean currents affect the climate Africa?
- ✓ They bring rainfall to Africa.
- ✓ They make coastal areas of Africa warm.

Give three examples of warm ocean currents
- ✓ Guinea Ocean current.
- ✓ Mozambique Ocean current.
- ✓ Somali Ocean current.

Cold ocean currents
- ✓ These are currents that blow from cold areas to warm areas.

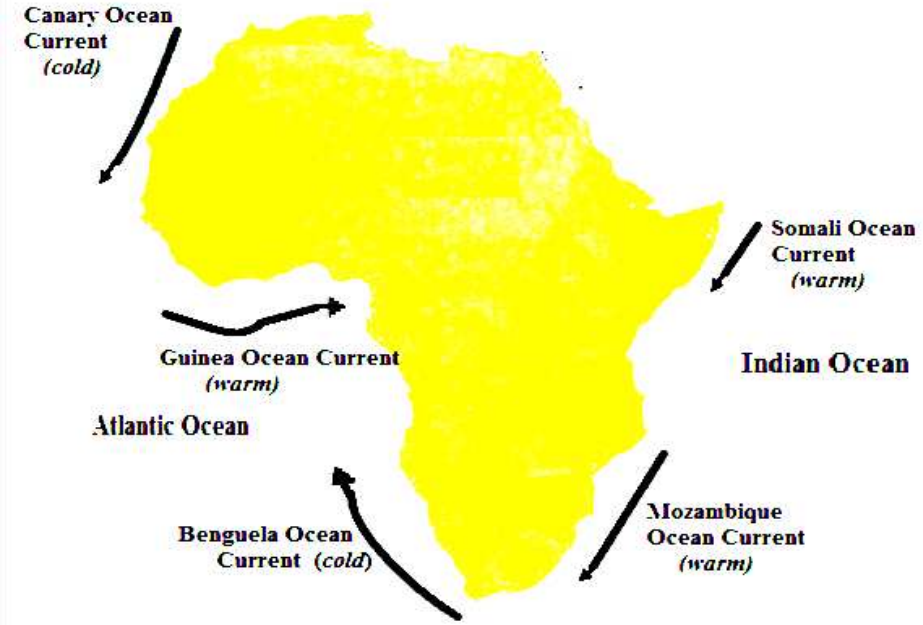
How do cold ocean currents affect the climate Africa?
- ✓ They do not bring rainfall to Africa.
- ✓ They make coastal areas of Africa cold.

Give two examples of cold ocean current.
- ✓ Benguela Ocean current
- ✓ Canary Ocean current

Name the Ocean currents that responsible for dry conditions in Namib Desert.
- ✓ Benguela ocean currents

Give two effects of ocean currents.
- ✓ Warm ocean currents bring rainfall to Africa.
- ✓ Cold ocean currents do not bring rainfall to Africa.

A MAP SHOWING OCEAN CURRENTS OF AFRICA



What is wind?
- ✓ Wind is the fast moving air.

Give two causes wind.
- ✓ Changes in temperatures
- ✓ Differences in air pressure

What are prevailing winds?
- ✓ Prevailing winds are winds which blow around Africa.

How do prevailing winds affect the climate of Africa?
- ✓ Warm winds bring rainfall to Africa unlike dry or cold winds.

Name the prevailing winds that influence/affect the climate of Africa.
- ✓ North East Monsoon Winds.
- ✓ South East Monsoon Winds.
- ✓ North East Trade Winds.
- ✓ Southwest monsoon Winds.
- ✓ Harmattan winds.
- ✓ Westerlies winds

The North East and South East Monsoon Winds
- ✓ These winds blow from Indian Ocean.

Name two prevailing winds that bring rainfall to East Africa.
- ✓ North East monsoon winds.
- ✓ South East monsoon winds.

Why do Northeast and Southeast monsoon winds bring rainfall to East Africa?
- ✓ They carry a lot of moisture to East Africa.

Give one way Northeast and Southeast monsoon winds influence the climate of East Africa.
- ✓ They bring rainfall to Africa.

Northeast trade winds
- ✓ These winds blow from Arabia desert.

How do Northeast trade winds affect the climate of Africa?
- ✓ They do not bring rainfall to East Africa.

Name the prevailing winds which don't bring rainfall to East Africa.
- ✓ North East trade winds

Give one reason why the Northeast trade winds do not bring rainfall to East Africa.
- ✓ They blow from a desert area.
- ✓ They are dry.

South East Trade Winds
- ✓ These winds blow from the Atlantic Ocean to West Africa.

How do South East Trade Winds affect the climate of West Africa?
- ✓ They bring rainfall to West Africa.

Name the prevailing winds that bring rainfall to West Africa.
- ✓ Southeast trade winds.

Harmattan winds

Name the prevailing winds that blow around the Sahara desert?

✓ Harmattan winds

How do Harmattan winds affect the climate of West Africa?

They do not bring rainfall to West Africa.

Give one reason why Harmattan winds do not bring rainfall to West Africa.

✓ They carry no moisture from the desert.

✓ They are dry.

Name the prevailing winds that blow around the Cape region of South Africa and the Mediterranean land in the North Africa.

✓ Westerlies winds

Name the prevailing winds that bring rainfall to the Cape region of South Africa and the Mediterranean land in the North Africa.

✓ Westerlies winds.

Write ITCZ in full.

✓ Inter-Tropical Convergence Zone.

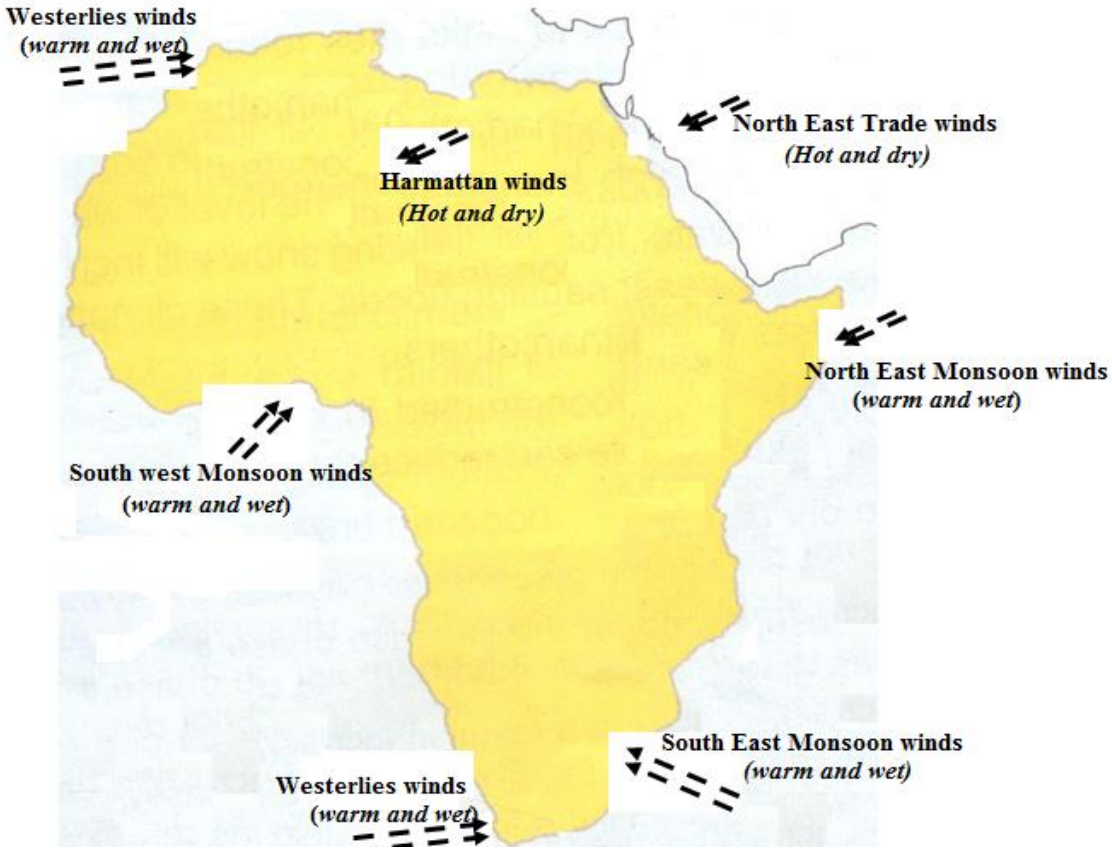
What do we call the place where two trade winds meet?

✓ Inter-Tropical Convergence Zone.

Note: - *It is normally occurs in the afternoon hours.*

- *When the cold winds meet the warm winds, warm winds are forced to rise which later brings rainfall.*

A MAP SHOWING PREVAILING WINDS OF AFRICA.



Give two ways climate influence people's way of living.
- ✓ Climate makes people to build houses with slanting roofs.
- ✓ Climate makes people to paint houses white colour.
- ✓ Climate affects people's way of dressing.
- ✓ Climate affects people's activities.

How does climate affect people's style of building houses?
- ✓ People paint houses white colour in hot areas.
- ✓ People build houses with slanting roofs in areas which receive heavy rainfall.
- ✓ People build houses with flat roofs in desert areas.

Give two reasons why people paint their houses with white colour.
- ✓ To reduce on heat from the sun
- ✓ To reflect sunlight.

Why do people build houses with slanting roofs in areas which receive heavy rainfall?
- ✓ To enable water to flow down the roof.

Give two reasons why people in desert areas build houses with flat roofs.
- ✓ To prevent houses from wind destruction.
- ✓ To regulate temperature indoors.

How does climate affect people's culture?
- ✓ In hot areas people wear light clothes.
- ✓ In hot areas people wear white clothes.
- ✓ In cold areas people wear heavy clothes.

Give one reason why people in hot areas wear light/white clothes.
- ✓ To reduce on heat from the sun.

State any two reasons why people in cold areas wear thick/heavy clothes.
- ✓ To get warmth.
- ✓ To prevent coldness.

Give one reason why people in desert areas put on turbans and veils.
- ✓ To avoid direct sunshine from the sun.

How is climate an important resource to people?
- ✓ Good climate favours crop growing.
- ✓ Good climate favours growth of pasture for animals.
- ✓ Climate influences the way of living.
- ✓ Climate influences people's activities.
- ✓ Climate influences people's way of dressing.
- ✓ Climate influences people's way of building houses.

VEGETATION OF AFRICA

What is vegetation?
- ✓ Vegetation is the plant cover of an area.

Mention any four components of vegetation.
- ✓ Crops
- ✓ Trees
- ✓ Grass
- ✓ Flowers

Give two types of vegetation.
- ✓ Natural vegetation
- ✓ Planted vegetation

Planted vegetation

- ✓ Planted vegetation is the plant cover of an area that grows under the influence of man.

Give any four examples of planted vegetation.

- ✓ Planted Forests
- ✓ Planted grass.
- ✓ Planted flowers
- ✓ Crops

Natural vegetation

- ✓ Natural vegetation is the plant cover of an area that grows under the influence of God.
- ✓ Natural vegetation is the plant cover of an area that grows naturally on its own.

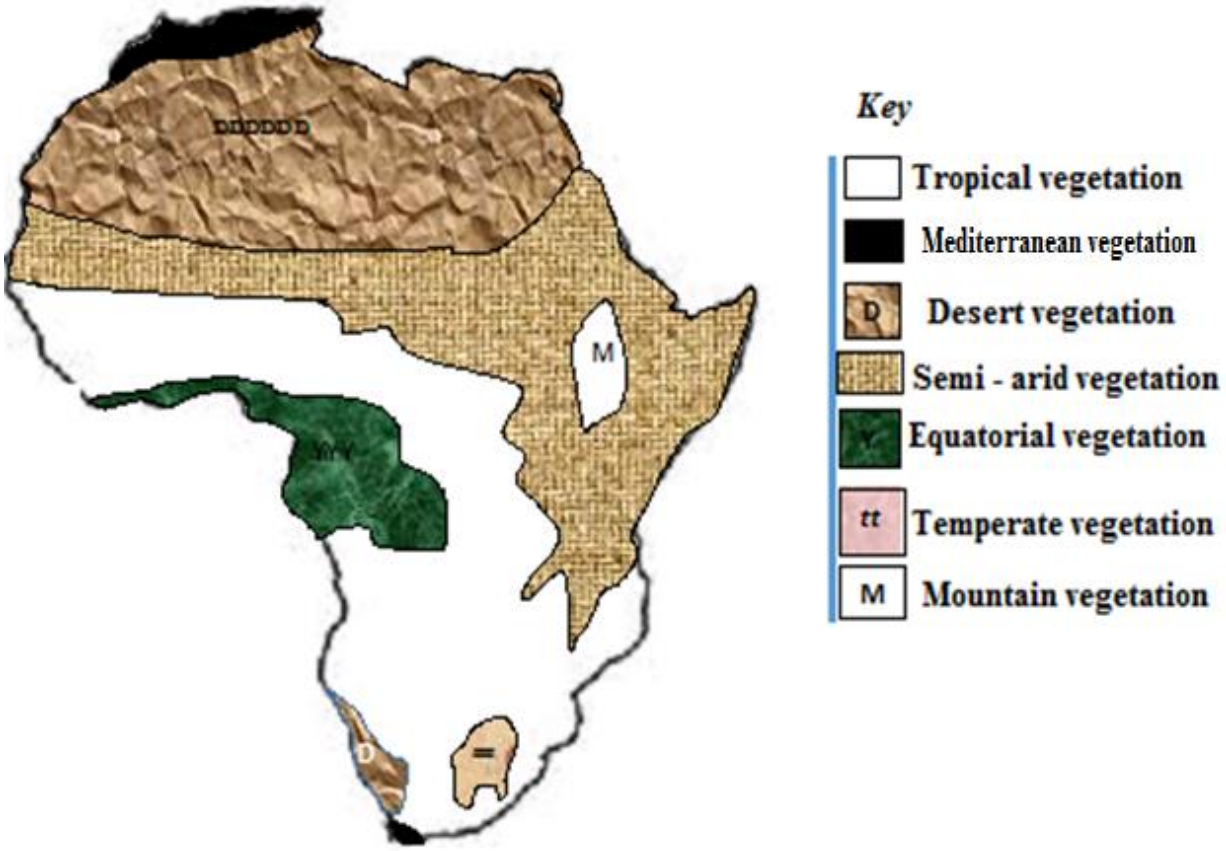
Give any four examples of Natural vegetation.

- ✓ Trees
- ✓ Bushes
- ✓ Thickets
- ✓ Natural forests
- ✓ Shrubs Grassland
- ✓ Swamps/wetlands

Name the types of natural vegetation.

- ✓ Natural forests
- ✓ Savannah vegetation
- ✓ Desert vegetation
- ✓ Semi-arid vegetation
- ✓ Mediterranean vegetation
- ✓ Temperate vegetation
- ✓ Mangrove Vegetation
- ✓ Mountain vegetation

A MAP SHOWING VEGETATION ZONES OF AFRICA



FORESTS

- ✓ A forest is a large area of land covered with trees.

Give two types of forest.

- ✓ Natural forests
- ✓ Planed forests

What are natural forests?

- ✓ These are forests that grow under the influence of God.
- ✓ These are forests that grow naturally on their own.

State the characteristics of natural forests.

- ✓ Trees produce hardwood.
- ✓ Trees are evergreen.
- ✓ Trees are resistant to diseases.
- ✓ Trees form a canopy.
- ✓ Trees naturally grow tall.
- ✓ Trees are of different types.
- ✓ Trees take long period of time to mature.
- ✓ They receive heavy rainfall.
- ✓ They have thick undergrowth.

Give three examples of natural forests.

- ✓ Equatorial rainforest.
- ✓ Mediterranean forests.
- ✓ Mangrove forests.

Equatorial Rainforests

- ✓ Equatorial rainforests are also called tropical rainforests.
- ✓ They are described as evergreen forests.

State the characteristics of Equatorial rainforests. (Equatorial vegetation)

- ✓ Trees produce hardwood.
- ✓ Trees are evergreen.
- ✓ Trees are resistant to diseases.
- ✓ Trees form a canopy.
- ✓ Trees naturally grow tall.
- ✓ Trees are of different types.
- ✓ Trees take long period of time to mature.
- ✓ Trees have buttress roots.
- ✓ Trees have broad leaves.
- ✓ They have thick undergrowth called shrubs.
- ✓ They have climbing plants.
- ✓ They receive heavy rainfall throughout the year.

Why do trees in the equatorial rainforests grow very tall?

- ✓ To compete for sunlight.
- ✓ They receive plenty of rainfall.
- ✓ The areas have fertile soils.

Why do the trees in rainforest grow buttress roots?

- ✓ To provide extra support since the trees are very tall.

Why don't trees in rainforests shed their leaves?

- ✓ They receive plenty of rainfall.

Name the tree species found in the equatorial rainforests.

- ✓ Mahogany
- ✓ Rosewood
- ✓ Sapele
- ✓ Greenheart
- ✓ Troika (Mvule)
- ✓ Ebony

Name the countries in Africa with Equatorial rainforests.

- ✓ DRC
- ✓ Central African Republic
- ✓ Gabon
- ✓ Cameroon
- ✓ Sierra Leone
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Senegal
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Nigeria

Note: *In Uganda, equatorial rainforests are found around the shores of Lake Victoria.*

Mention examples of rainforests in Uganda.

- ✓ Mabira forest
- ✓ Marabigambo forest
- ✓ Kibale forest
- ✓ Bwindi impenetrable forest.
- ✓ Mt. Elgon forest.
- ✓ Budongo forest.
- ✓ Bugoma forest.
- ✓ M. Rwenzori forest.
- ✓ Maramagambo forest.

State any four reasons why there are few people living in the equatorial rainforests.

- ✓ Presence of thick forests.
- ✓ Presence of vectors.
- ✓ Presence of man eaters.
- ✓ Poor wet and hot conditions.
- ✓ Poor transport and communication.

Write down any four economic activities in Tropical rainforests.

- ✓ Lumbering
- ✓ Hunting
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Crop growing (on small scale)

Name the major economic activity carried out in the equatorial rainforests.

- ✓ Lumbering

What is lumbering?

- ✓ Lumbering is the legal cutting down of mature trees for timber production.

Who is a lumber jack?

- ✓ A lumber jack is a person who fells mature trees for timber production.

Give any four problems faced by lumber jacks.

- ✓ Attacked from man eaters
- ✓ Accidents when felling trees.
- ✓ Poor transport.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of timber.

How do tropical rainforests important to a carpenter.

- ✓ They provide timbers to a carpenter for making furniture.

Mediterranean forests (Mediterranean vegetation)

- ✓ This vegetation is found in Northwest and Southwest Africa.

State any three characteristics of Mediterranean forests.

- ✓ Trees produce softwood.
- ✓ Trees are evergreen.
- ✓ Trees have tap roots.

Give one reason why Mediterranean forests produce softwood.

- ✓ Tree in Mediterranean forests grow very fast.

Mention the tree species found in Mediterranean forests.

- ✓ Pine
- ✓ Rosewood
- ✓ Conifers
- ✓ Cypress
- ✓ Fir
- ✓ Oak
- ✓ Olive
- ✓ Cedar

Name the African countries with Mediterranean vegetation.

- ✓ Algeria
- ✓ Morocco
- ✓ Tunisia
- ✓ South Africa
- ✓ Libya

Give two reasons why Mediterranean regions are densely populated.
- ✓ Due to presence of fertile soils for crop growing.
- ✓ There are no thick forests.

Mangrove Forests
- ✓ Mangrove forests are also called swampy forest.
- ✓ This type of natural vegetation is mostly found in low lying areas.
- ✓ They are common along the coast of East and West Africa.
- ✓ They are also found in the Western part of Madagascar

Give the factor which the favours the growth of mangrove forests.
- ✓ Salty water

Mention the characteristics of mangrove forest.
- ✓ They produce hardwood.
- ✓ They grow in salty water areas.
- ✓ They grow in water logged areas.
- ✓ They receive heavy rainfall.
- ✓ The trees are evergreen.
- ✓ The trees are very tall.
- ✓ They have buttress roots.
- ✓ They provide water proof timber.

Name the African countries with Mangrove forest.
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Liberia
- ✓ Guinea
- ✓ Tunisia

Give one way mangrove forests are important to water transport.
- ✓ They provide water proof timber used for making ships.

State any three economic importance of mangrove forests.
- ✓ They provide water proof timber used in ship building.
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They are sources of income through timber export.

What is a swamp?
- ✓ A swamp is a water logged area with vegetation.

How are swamps important to people?
- ✓ They provide water for domestic use.
- ✓ They provide water for irrigation.
- ✓ They act as fishing grounds.
- ✓ They help in rain formation.
- ✓ They help to control floods.
- ✓ They are sources of raw materials for making crafts.
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They filter dirty water.
- ✓ They are sources of building materials.
- ✓ They are used for crop growing animals grazing
- ✓ They are homes of wild animals

Write down any four crops that grow well in swampy areas.
- ✓ Coco yams
- ✓ Rice
- ✓ Sugarcane
- ✓ Water melon
- ✓ Sugarcane
- ✓ Egg plant
- ✓ Cabbage

Give any four dangers of swamps to people.
- ✓ They are breeding places for diseases vectors.
- ✓ They have dangerous water animals that attack people.
- ✓ The areas can flood during rainy season.
- ✓ They are hiding places for wrong doers.

Give any four building materials got from swamps.
- ✓ Clay
- ✓ Water
- ✓ Papyrus reed
- ✓ Sand

Mention any three problems faced by wetland.
- ✓ Drought
- ✓ Swamp drainage.
- ✓ Dumping waste materials.

What is swamp drainage?
- ✓ Swamps drainage is the clearing of swamps for other purposes.

State the reasons why people carry out swamp drainage.
- ✓ To get land farming.
- ✓ To get land for settlement.
- ✓ To get land for industrialization.
- ✓ To construct roads.
- ✓ To carry out brick making.
- ✓ To carry our pottery.
- ✓ To carry out mining.

State any four dangers of swamp drainage.
- ✓ Drought
- ✓ Floods
- ✓ Destruction of animals' habitat
- ✓ Displacement of wild animals.
- ✓ Destruction of natural environment.

Give three immediate effects of swamp drainage.
- ✓ Destruction of natural environment.
- ✓ Destruction of animals' habitat
- ✓ Displacement of wild animals.

Give the reasons why swamps should be conserved.
- ✓ To control flood.
- ✓ To control drought.
- ✓ To protect animals' habitats.
- ✓ To influence rain formation.
- ✓ To get water for home use.

Mention any four animals that live in swamps.
- ✓ Snakes
- ✓ Frogs
- ✓ Tortoises
- ✓ Monitor lizard
- ✓ Fish

How do swamps help to control floods?
- ✓ Swamps absorb excess flowing water.

Give three economic activities carried out in swamps.
- ✓ Crop growing.
- ✓ Pottery
- ✓ Brick making.
- ✓ Crafts making.

PLANTED FORESTS
- ✓ Planted forests are forests that grow under the influence of man.

State the characteristics of planted forests.
- ✓ Trees produce soft wood.
- ✓ Trees take short period of time to mature.
- ✓ Trees are not resistant to diseases.
- ✓ Trees are planted in lines.
- ✓ One type of tree spices is planted.

Why do planted forests produce soft wood?
- ✓ Trees grow very fast.
- ✓ Trees take short period of time to mature.

Mention the trees species found in planted forests.
- ✓ Pine
- ✓ Fir
- ✓ Cedar
- ✓ Eucalyptus
- ✓ Cypress
- ✓ Conifers
- ✓ Musizi

Give the examples of planted forests in Uganda.

Forest	***District***
Lendu (largest)	West Nile
Katuugo	Nakasongola
Mabanga	Mbarara
Itwara	Mbarara
Butamira	Jinja
Magamaga	Mayuge
Bunya forest	Mayuge
Mafuga	Kanungu

How are forests economically important to people.
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ They are sources of fuel wood which is sold for income.
- ✓ They have fertile soils which favour agriculture.
- ✓ They prevent soil erosion.

Mention any four social importance of forests.
- ✓ They help in rain formation.
- ✓ They act as wind breaks.
- ✓ They are home for wild animals.
- ✓ They are sources of herbal medicine.
- ✓ They beautify the environment

How are trees politically important to people?
- ✓ Trees are used for land demarcations.

Give four disadvantages/dangers of forests.
- ✓ They are hiding out rebels.
- ✓ They harbor disease vectors.
- ✓ They are homes dangerous wild animals.
- ✓ They reduce land for other economic activities.
- ✓ They make road construction difficult.

How do forests important to traditional doctors
- ✓ They provide herbal medicine to traditional doctors.

How do forests influence climate.
- ✓ Forests help in rain formation.

How does vegetation help in rain formation?
- ✓ Through the process of transpiration.

How does vegetation help to control soil erosion?
- ✓ Vegetation holds soil particles together.
- ✓ Vegetation reduces the speed of fast flowing water.

How is firewood important to people?
- ✓ It is sold for income
- ✓ It is used as wood fuel.

How do forests provide income to people?
- ✓ Through tourism.
- ✓ They provide firewood which is sold for income.

In which one ways do forests support wild animals?
- ✓ They provide shelter to wild animals.

Why are tress planted on the school compound?
- ✓ To provide shade at school.
- ✓ To control soil erosion at school.
- ✓ To beautify the school compound.
- ✓ For scientific and study research.
- ✓ Trees act wind breaks.
- ✓ Trees provide fresh air at school.
- ✓ Some trees provide fruit to school children.
- ✓ Some trees provide firewood to the school.

How do we take care of planted vegetation?
- ✓ By irrigating it
- ✓ By fencing it
- ✓ By pruning
- ✓ By spraying
- ✓ By thinning
- ✓ By adding manure or fertilizers to the soils.

Give four uses of soft wood
- ✓ For making soft boards.
- ✓ For making papers.
- ✓ For making pencils.
- ✓ For making match boxes.

TROPICAL GRASSLANDS
- ✓ Tropical grassland is also called savanna grasslands.

Name the type of natural vegetation that covers the largest part of Africa.
- ✓ Savanna vegetation

What is savanna vegetation?
- ✓ Savanna vegetation is a large area of land covered with short bushes and scattered trees.

Name the tropical grasslands of Africa.
- ✓ Savanna vegetation.

State any four characteristics of Savanna vegetation.
- ✓ The grasses have long roots.
- ✓ It experiences long dry season.
- ✓ It has scattered trees.
- ✓ It consists of thorny bushes and short shrub.
- ✓ They have tall grass and scattered trees.
- ✓ Most trees shed their leaves during the dry season
- ✓ The grasses became yellow in dry season and very green in wet season.

Give two types of Savanna vegetation
- ✓ Savanna woodlands. (*dry savanna*)
- ✓ Savanna grasslands. (*wet savanna*)

SAVANNA WOODLANDS
- ✓ Savanna woodlands are also called **dry savanna**.

What do we call the savanna woodland of Africa?
- ✓ Miombo Woodland.

Name four countries in Africa which have savanna woodland.
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Angola
- ✓ Malawi
- ✓ Zambia
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Zimbabwe

Name major economic carried out in Miombo woodland.
- ✓ Bee keeping/Apiculture

Give one reason why Miombo woodland favours bee keeping.
- ✓ Bees cannot be attacked by tsetse flies.

Give one reason why Miombo woodland does favour human settlement.
- ✓ Due to presence tsetse flies which spread sleeping sickness to people.

Give one reason why Miombo woodland does favour dairy farming
- ✓ Due to presence of tsetse flies which spread Nangana to animals.

Give any threes ways of controlling of tsetse flies.
- ✓ Spraying tsetse flies.
- ✓ Using tsetse fly traps.
- ✓ Clearing bushes.

Give any three reasons why Miombo woodlands are sparsely populated.
- ✓ Due to presence of tsetse flies
- ✓ Due to prolonged drought
- ✓ Due to presence of infertile soils.

What do we call trees which shed their leaves during dry season?
- ✓ Deciduous trees.

Give one reason why deciduous trees shed their leaves during dry season.
- ✓ To reduce on the rate of transpiration.

What do we call trees which do not shed their leaves?
- ✓ Evergreen trees.

Give three examples of trees found in savanna vegetation.
- ✓ Acacia
- ✓ Baobab
- ✓ Euphobia

Give any four economic activities carried out in savanna grassland of Africa.
- ✓ Cattle keeping
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Crop growing
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Industrialization
- ✓ Wildlife conservation

State any four reasons why savanna grasslands are densely populated.
- ✓ Due to presence of enough land for farming.
- ✓ Due to presence of enough land for settlement.
- ✓ Due to presence of enough land for animal rearing.
- ✓ Due to presence of good climate.

Name two grasslands of Africa.
- ✓ Savanna grasslands.
- ✓ Temperate grasslands.

Mountain vegetation
- ✓ Mountain vegetation is also called Montane vegetation.

Which type of vegetation is found in mountainous and highland areas?
- ✓ Mountain vegetation

Name the types of vegetation on mountains.
- ✓ Savanna vegetation
- ✓ Tropical rainforest
- ✓ Bamboo
- ✓ Heath and Moorland.
- ✓ Bare rocks.
- ✓ Snow

Name any four Areas with mountain vegetation in Africa
- ✓ Around Mt. Elgon
- ✓ Around Mt. Kilimanjaro
- ✓ Around Mt. Rwenzori
- ✓ Around Drakensberg mountain
- ✓ Around Ethiopian highlands

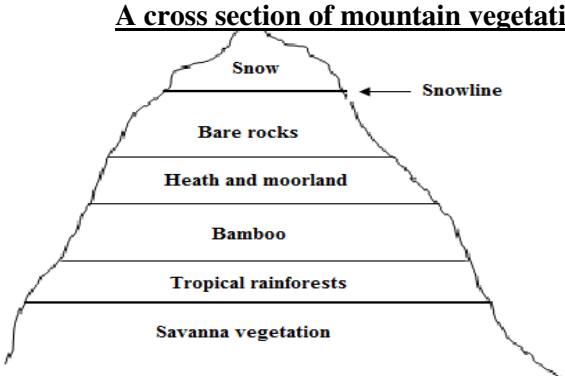
Characteristics of mountain vegetation
- ✓ Trees produce hardwood.
- ✓ Trees are very tall.
- ✓ Trees are evergreen.

Give the economic activities carried out in mountain areas.
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Crop growing
- ✓ Lumbering
- ✓ Hunting
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Quarrying

Give two factors that affect the varying vegetation on mountain.
- ✓ Rainfall
- ✓ Altitude

Why is there little or no vegetation on mountain peaks?
- ✓ It is too cold to support plant life.

A cross section of mountain vegetation.



TEMPERATE VEGETATION

- ✓ This type of vegetation is also called **Highveld climate/Velds.**
- ✓ This region covers the Eastern parts of South Africa to the East of Drakensberg range.

Name the temperate grasslands of Africa.

- ✓ Highveld

What do we call the region covered with temperate vegetation in South Africa?

- ✓ Velds

Name three regions in South Africa which are called Velds.

- ✓ Transvaal
- ✓ Natal } Province
- ✓ Orange Free States

Give any any examples of tree spices found in temperate vegetation.

- ✓ Blackwood.
- ✓ Chestnut
- ✓ Wattle

Semi - arid vegetation

State any three characteristics of semi – desert vegetation.

- ✓ It has high temperatures 20^0C – 32^0C.
- ✓ The dry season is longer than 4 months.
- ✓ The average annual rainfall is lower between 375 – 620mm.

Name four areas which experience Semi – desert vegetation in Africa.

- ✓ North Eastern Uganda
- ✓ Central Tanzania
- ✓ North Western Kenya
- ✓ Northern Nigeria
- ✓ Mali
- ✓ Botswana
- ✓ Niger

Give any four economic activities in Semi desert areas.

- ✓ Animals rearing
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Trade

Desert vegetation

- ✓ These are areas which receive little or no rainfall throughout the year.

State the characteristics of desert vegetation.

- ✓ It receives little or no rainfall throughout the year
- ✓ It has sandy soils.
- ✓ Trees have tap roots.
- ✓ It has thorny trees.
- ✓ Trees have thick barks.
- ✓ Trees have thin leaves.
- ✓ It has sand dunes.

State any one reason why trees in desert areas have tap roots.

- ✓ Tap roots absorb water for long time.

Why there are few people living in desert and semi desert areas?

- ✓ Due to presence of hot and dry weather conditions.
- ✓ Due to presence of infertile soils.
- ✓ Due to poor climatic conditions.
- ✓ Due to poor transport services.
- ✓ Famine is common

Vegetation distribution

- ✓ Vegetation distribution is the way plant cover is spread in an area.

Give the factors that affect/influence the vegetation distribution of Africa.

- ✓ Climate/Rainfall distribution.
- ✓ Soil fertility/ Nature of the soil.
- ✓ Human activities
- ✓ Temperature
- ✓ Altitude
- ✓ Latitude
- ✓ Drainage/water bodies
- ✓ Government policies

How do the following factors affect/influence vegetation distribution?

a) Climate

- ✓ Areas which receive heavy rainfall have thicker vegetation compared to areas which receive little or no rainfall.

b) Soil fertility/Nature of the soil.

- ✓ Areas with fertile soils have thicker vegetation compared to areas with infertile soils.

c) Human activities

- ✓ Afforestation support vegetation growth unlike deforestation.

d) Altitude.

- ✓ Areas on a high altitude have thicker vegetation compared to areas on a low altitude.

e) Drainage

- ✓ Areas near large water bodies have thicker vegetation compared to areas far from large water bodies.

f) Temperature

- ✓ Areas with hot temperatures have thicker vegetation compared to areas with cool temperatures.

g) Latitude

- ✓ Areas near the equator have thicker vegetation compared to areas far from the equator.

State any one way vegetation influence/affect population distribution

- ✓ Areas with thicker vegetation are sparsely populated compared to areas with little or no vegetation.

State any two ways a big population affects vegetation.

- ✓ It leads to deforestation.
- ✓ It leads to swamp drainage.

Environmental degradation

- ✓ Environmental degradation is the destroying of the natural environment.

Outline causes of environmental degradation.

- ✓ Swamp drainage
- ✓ Overpopulation
- ✓ Rural-urban migration
- ✓ Overgrazing
- ✓ Over cultivation
- ✓ Brick making
- ✓ Deforestation
- ✓ Settlement

Mention human activities that destroy the environment

- ✓ Deforestation
- ✓ Bush burning
- ✓ Over grazing
- ✓ Over cultivation
- ✓ Road construction
- ✓ Industrialization
- ✓ Urbanization
- ✓ Crop farming
- ✓ Lumbering
- ✓ Charcoal burning
- ✓ Mining

Give any four dangers of environmental degradation.
- ✓ Soil erosion
- ✓ Desertification
- ✓ Soil infertility
- ✓ Prolonged droughts
- ✓ Global warming

What is deforestation?
- ✓ Deforestation is the massive cutting down of trees without replacement.

Give reasons why people practice deforestation.
- ✓ To get timber.
- ✓ To construct roads.
- ✓ To get fuel wood.
- ✓ To get land for industrialization.
- ✓ To get land to building houses.
- ✓ To get land for settlement.
- ✓ To get land for farming.

Give any four dangers of deforestation.
- ✓ Soil erosion.
- ✓ Desertification
- ✓ Prolonged drought.
- ✓ Displacement of wild animals.
- ✓ Destruction of homes of wild animals.
- ✓ Destruction of natural beauty of the environment.
- ✓ It reduces chances of rainfall.

Give four ways of controlling deforestation.
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws against deforestation.
- ✓ Teaching people about the importance of trees.
- ✓ Teaching people about dangers of deforestation.
- ✓ Promoting rural electrification.

How does deforestation affect soil fertility?
- ✓ It causes soil erosion.

How does cutting of trees affect wildlife?
- ✓ It leads to migration of wildlife.
- ✓ It leads to displacement of wildlife.
- ✓ It destroys the shelter of wildlife.

How does cutting of the trees affect the climate of an area?
- ✓ It reduces the chances of rainfall.
- ✓ It leads to desertification.
- ✓ It leads to global warming.
- ✓ It leads to drought.

Give any three ways destruction of natural vegetation affects the environment?
- ✓ It reduces chances of rain formation.
- ✓ It causes soil erosion.
- ✓ It leads to desertification.

Environmental conservation
- ✓ Environmental conservation is the preserving of the natural environment.

Mention the ways of conserving /protecting of the natural vegetation.
- ✓ By practicing afforestation.
- ✓ By practicing re-afforestation.
- ✓ By practicing agro-forestry.
- ✓ By practicing rotational grazing.
- ✓ By avoiding bush burning.
- ✓ By avoiding deforestation.
- ✓ By using of better farming methods.
- ✓ By controlling lumbering.

Give any three ways government policies can promote vegetation growth.
- ✓ By controlling environment degradation through NEMA.
- ✓ By supplying trees to farmers.
- ✓ Through rural electrification to reduce deforestation.

Give the meaning of the following terms.
- ✓ ***Agro forestry*** *is the growing of crops together with useful trees on the same piece of land.*
- ✓ ***Afforestation*** *is the planting of many trees where they have never been.*
- ✓ ***Re-afforestation*** *is the planting of trees where they have been cut on a large scale.*

TOURISM AND WILDLIFE OF AFRICA
- ✓ Wildlife refers to the animals, plants, birds and insects that live on the natural environment or bush.

Why wildlife should be preserved / protected?
- ✓ It attract tourist who bring income.
- ✓ It creates employment to people.
- ✓ It helps to conserve the natural environment.

Give any four factors that influence wildlife distribution.
- ✓ Vegetation
- ✓ Government policy
- ✓ Security
- ✓ Availability of water.
- ✓ Diseases

THE LOCATION OF GAME PARKS IN AFRICA

What is a game park?
- ✓ A game park is a large area of land set aside by the government to preserve wildlife.
- ✓ A game Park is a place where wildlife is protected by government law.
- ✓ A game Park is a large area of land gazetted by government to preserve wild life.
- ✓ A game reserve is an area gazetted for both domestic and wild animals.

Note*: Most of game parks in Africa are found in savannah vegetation/tropical grasslands.*

Give any three reasons why most of game Parks are found in Savanna/Tropical Vegetation.
- ✓ There is enough pasture for animals.
- ✓ There is enough water for animals.
- ✓ There is enough space for animal shelter.
- ✓ Due to favorable climate for animals.

Note:
- ✓ ***Namib – Naukluft national Park*** *is the largest in Africa.*
- ✓ ***Ruaha national Park*** *is the largest in Tanzania and East Africa.*
- ✓ ***Tsavo national Park*** *is the largest in Kenya.*
- ✓ ***Murchison falls national Park*** *is the largest in Uganda.*

Name the major tourist attractions in the following game parks.

Game Park	Major tourist attraction
Bwindi national park	Mountain Gorillas,
Mgahinga national park	Mountain Gorillas
Lake Nakuru national park	Flamingoes
Tsavo national park	Lions
Kidepo national park	Ostrich
Serengeti National park	Hippopotamus
Kazinga channel	Hippopotamus
Sibiloi national park	Crocodiles
Ruaha national park	Elephants

Why Mountain Gorillas live in Mgahinga and Bwindi National Parks

- ✓ Presence of fruits for mountain gorillas.

Write down any four importance of game parks.

- ✓ They attract tourists who bring in foreign exchange.
- ✓ They help to conserve wildlife for future generation.
- ✓ They provide employment to people.
- ✓ They promote international relationship and cooperation.
- ✓ They are homes for wild animals.
- ✓ They help to conserve natural vegetation.
- ✓ They promote development of roads in remote area.

How do game parks help to conserve natural vegetation?

- ✓ Deforestation is not allowed in game parks.
- ✓ Swamp drainage is not allowed in game parks.

Give any four problems faced by game parks in Africa.

- ✓ Poaching
- ✓ Insecurity
- ✓ Prolonged drought
- ✓ Deforestation
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Animal diseases
- ✓ Game park encroachment
- ✓ Wild bush fire
- ✓ Shortage of pasture for animals
- ✓ Shortage of water for animals
- ✓ Shortage of skilled manpower
- ✓ Limited advertisement

Mention any four problems faced by animals in game parks.

- ✓ Shortage of pasture
- ✓ Shortage of water
- ✓ Wild bush fire
- ✓ Poaching
- ✓ Insecurity
- ✓ Prolonged drought
- ✓ Animal diseases

Give any four possible solutions to the problems faced by game parks in Africa.

- ✓ Enforcing strict laws on poaching.
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws on deforestation in game parks
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws on game park encroachment.
- ✓ Treating sick animals in game parks.
- ✓ Promoting better security in game parks.
- ✓ Constructing better roads connecting to game parks.

POACHING

- ✓ Poaching is the illegal hunting of wild animals in game parks.

Give any four reasons why people hunt animals.

- ✓ To get Meat.
- ✓ To get hides and skins.
- ✓ To get ivory.
- ✓ To get animal trunks.

Mention any fur dangers of poaching.

- ✓ It affects tourism industry.
- ✓ It reduces animals in game parks.
- ✓ It destroys animals' pasture.
- ✓ It destroys animals' shelter.
- ✓ It causes wild bush fire
- ✓ It leads to death of animals in game parks
- ✓ It leads to extinction of animals in game parks

Why is the government of Uganda discouraging poaching in game parks?

- ✓ To avoid extinction of animals in the game parks.
- ✓ To preserve wildlife for future generation.
- ✓ To preserve wildlife for research.
- ✓ It affects tourism industry.

How does poaching negatively affect tourism industry?
- ✓ It leads to migration of animals from game parks.
- ✓ It leads to extinction of animals in game parks.

Give three groups of animals found in Africa
- ✓ Carnivores
- ✓ Herbivores
- ✓ Omnivores

What are carnivores?
- ✓ These are animals which feed on flesh.

Give four examples of carnivores.
- ✓ Lions
- ✓ Tigers
- ✓ Leopards
- ✓ Cheetahs
- ✓ Africa rock pythons

What are herbivores?
- ✓ These are animals which eat grass.

Give four examples of herbivores.
- ✓ Elephants
- ✓ Kobs
- ✓ Zebra
- ✓ Antelopes
- ✓ Giraffes

What are omnivores?
- ✓ These are animals which feed on both grass and flesh.

Give three examples of omnivores.
- ✓ Warthogs (wild dogs)
- ✓ Velvet monkeys
- ✓ Patas monkeys

Give any two reasons why different animals live indifferent vegetation zones.
- ✓ Different animals feed on different type of vegetation.
- ✓ Thick vegetation attracts many animals unlike little vegetation.

How is vegetation useful to animals?
- ✓ Some animals use vegetation as food.
- ✓ Animals use vegetation for protection.
- ✓ Vegetation provides Shelter to animals.

Give any four ways four ways in which wild animals can be conserved.
- ✓ Avoiding poaching.
- ✓ Avowing deforestation.
- ✓ Gazetting game parks.
- ✓ Treating sick wild animals.

Tourism
- ✓ Tourism is the business of proving services to people visiting places of interest for pleasure and rest.

Who is a tourist?
- ✓ A tourist is a person who visits places of interest for pleasure and study purpose.

Name major tourist attractions in Africa
- ✓ Wildlife
- ✓ Physical features
- ✓ Vegetation
- ✓ Historical sites
- ✓ Climate
- ✓ African culture
- ✓ Beautiful beaches

Give any four African cultures that attract tourists.
- ✓ Dance
- ✓ Dress and costumes
- ✓ Musical instruments
- ✓ Artifacts
- ✓ Food

Why do tourists like to visit forest areas of Uganda?
- ✓ To enjoy seeing forest wildlife
- ✓ For adventure
- ✓ For scientific and study purposes

Why do tourists like visiting lakes and rivers?
- ✓ To enjoy cool climate.
- ✓ To see water animals.
- ✓ For adventure.
- ✓ To swim.
- ✓ For scientific and study purposes.

Why tourism is referred to as an industry?
- ✓ It is a source of government revenue.
- ✓ It is a source of income to people.
- ✓ It is a source of employment to people.
- ✓ It is an investment.

Why tourism is called an invisible trade?
- ✓ It does not involve physical exchange of goods yet income is earned.

Apart from tourism, give any four examples of invisible exports of Uganda.
- ✓ Hydroelectricity
- ✓ Skilled labour
- ✓ Security
- ✓ Insurance
- ✓ Banking

Mention any four services offered to tourists by the government.
- ✓ Transport
- ✓ Security
- ✓ Accommodation
- ✓ Entertainment

Give any four ways through which government gets money from tourists.
- ✓ After tourists paying for transport.
- ✓ After tourists paying for accommodation.
- ✓ After tourists paying for entertainment.
- ✓ After tourists paying for security.

Give any four tourist attractions found in Kenya and Tanzania but not in Uganda.
- ✓ Seaports
- ✓ Mangrove forests
- ✓ Coastal plains
- ✓ Natural harbours

Mention any four tourist attractions found in Libya but not in Uganda.
- ✓ Oases
- ✓ Desert climate
- ✓ Sand dunes
- ✓ Natural harbours

Give any four reasons why tourism in Kenya is more developed than that of Uganda.
- ✓ Kenya is politically stable than Uganda.
- ✓ Kenya has better transport services than Uganda.
- ✓ Kenya has better hotels and lodges than Uganda.
- ✓ Kenya advertises her tourism industry than Uganda.

Give the factors that have contributed to the development of tourism industry in Africa
- ✓ Political stability
- ✓ Improved hotels and lodges
- ✓ Presence of many animal species
- ✓ Presence of a variety of tourist attractions
- ✓ Better transport and communication
- ✓ High advertising of tourism industry
- ✓ Better security

Mention any four importance of tourism industry.
- ✓ It is a source of income.
- ✓ It creates employment to people
- ✓ It promotes trade
- ✓ It creates market for locally produced goods.
- ✓ It is a source of foreign exchange
- ✓ It promotes a country's image in other countries.
- ✓ It promotes the protection of wildlife.

Mention any four problems faced by tourism industry in Africa.
- ✓ Poaching
- ✓ Insecurity
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Poor accommodation facilities.
- ✓ Game park encroachment.
- ✓ Remoteness of some tourist attraction centres.
- ✓ Shortage of funds to promote tourism industry.
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour.

State any four possible solutions to the problems faced by tourism industry in Africa.
(Ways of promoting tourism industry)
- ✓ Constructing better roads
- ✓ Promoting better security
- ✓ Advertising tourism industry
- ✓ Building better hotels and lodges
- ✓ Preserving over culture
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws against poaching
- ✓ Providing enough security to tourists.

How can tourism be dangerous to a country?
- ✓ Some people may spy the country under a hide that they are tourists.
- ✓ Some animals move from game parks and destroy farmers' crops.
- ✓ Carnivorous animals attack nearby people's animals.
- ✓ Natural environment can be abused while constructing hotels for tourists.
- ✓ Tourists may promote moral decay e.g. homosexuality, prostitution

How does tourism promote security of the country?
- ✓ It encourages the government to strengthen security in order to protect the tourists.

In which way does security promote tourism?
- ✓ Security provides safety to tourists.

How does tourism industry provide employment to people?
- ✓ People work as game rangers.
- ✓ People work as game wardens.
- ✓ People work in hotels.
- ✓ People work as drivers in tourism companies.

How do hotels and lodges promote tourism in a country like Uganda?
- ✓ They provide accommodation to tourists.

In which one way does building of roads promote tourism in a country like Uganda?
- ✓ It eases the movement of tourists.

Why are tourists who come to Uganda given a map of Uganda?
- ✓ To locate the tourist attraction centres.
- ✓ To identify the tourist attraction centres.

MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF PEOPLE IN AFRICA.

What is migration?
- ✓ Migration is the movement of people with their property from one place to another for settlement.

Outline types of migration.
- ✓ Rural-urban migration.
- ✓ Urban-rural migration.
- ✓ Rural-rural migration.
- ✓ Urban-urban migration.
- ✓ Immigration
- ✓ Emigration

Rural -urban migration
- ✓ Rural-urban is the movement of people with their property from villages to towns for settlement.

Mention the causes of rural to urban migration.
- ✓ To look for jobs.
- ✓ To look for better schools.
- ✓ To look for better medical care.
- ✓ To look for better security.
- ✓ To look for better entertainment.
- ✓ To run away from bad cultural practices.
- ✓ To look for bigger markets for goods.

Give any four ways of controlling rural-urban migration.
- ✓ By building better schools in rural areas.
- ✓ By building better hospitals in rural areas.
- ✓ By extending electricity in rural areas.
- ✓ By strengthening security in rural areas.
- ✓ By constructing better roads in villages

Write down negative effects of rural-urban migration to people living in towns.
(Problems faced by people in towns)
- ✓ Overpopulation
- ✓ Easy spread of diseases
- ✓ Unemployment
- ✓ High crime rates
- ✓ Development of slums
- ✓ Poor sanitation
- ✓ Shortage of land
- ✓ Poor accommodation
- ✓ Congestion/traffic jam
- ✓ Sound pollution
- ✓ High rate of accidents
- ✓ High costs of living.

Mention four negative effects of rural-urban migration to people living in villages.
- ✓ Low food production
- ✓ Shortage of labour
- ✓ Decline of culture
- ✓ Insecurity

How are people in rural areas important to people in urban areas?
- ✓ They provide food to people in urban areas.
- ✓ They provide labour to people in urban areas.

How are people in urban areas important to people in rural areas?
- ✓ They employ people in rural areas.
- ✓ They provide market for goods from rural areas.

What is a slum?
- ✓ A slum is an area with poor housing and overcrowded in town.

Give any four problems faced by people living in slum areas.
- ✓ Poor sanitation
- ✓ Poor medical care
- ✓ High crime rates
- ✓ Theft

Give any four ways the government can solve problems faced by people living in slum areas.
- ✓ Strengthening security to avoid theft.
- ✓ Building hospitals in slum areas.
- ✓ Teaching people about the dangers of poor sanitation.
- ✓ Renovation roads in slum areas.
- ✓ Engaging people in developmental activities.

Urban-rural migration
- ✓ Urban-rural migration is the movement of people with their property from towns to villages for settlement.

Write down the causes of urban-rural migration.
- ✓ Loss of jobs
- ✓ Change of jobs
- ✓ Transfer of work place
- ✓ Retirement
- ✓ Prolonged sickness
- ✓ Shortage of land in towns
- ✓ Overcrowded houses in towns
- ✓ High standards of living
- ✓ High rate accidents in towns
- ✓ High crime rate in towns

Give four ways of encouraging urban-rural migration
- ✓ By setting up industries in rural areas.
- ✓ By construction better schools in rural areas.
- ✓ By constructing better roads in rural areas.
- ✓ By strengthening security in rural areas.
- ✓ By constructing better hospitals in rural areas.
- ✓ By extending electricity in rural areas

Urban-urban migration
- ✓ Urban-urban migration is the movement of people with their property from towns to towns for settlement.

Give any four cause of urban-urban migration.
- ✓ Job transfer.
- ✓ Difference in costs of living.
- ✓ Looking for better accommodation.
- ✓ Change of work place.
- ✓ Insecurity in some towns.

Rural-rural migration

- ✓ Rural-rural migration is the movement of people with their property from villages to villages for settlement.

Mention any four causes of rural-rural migration.

- ✓ Insecurity in some villages.
- ✓ Looking for areas with good climate
- ✓ Looking for fertile land for crop farming.
- ✓ Running away from epidemic diseases.
- ✓ Running away from natural disasters.

What is emigration?

- ✓ Emigration is the movement of people from a country to go to another country for settlement.

Who are emigrants?

- ✓ Emigrants are people who move out of the country to go to another country for settlement.

Immigration

- ✓ Immigration is the movement of people into a country from another country for settlement.

Who are immigrants?

- ✓ Immigrants are people who enter the country from another country for settlement.

Outline the causes of immigration/emigration

- ✓ Wars
- ✓ Natural disasters
- ✓ Unemployment
- ✓ Looking for better jobs
- ✓ Joining their families
- ✓ Looking for countries with good climate

How is past migration different from present migration?

- ✓ In past people migrated in large numbers unlike today.
- ✓ In the past, migrants had leaders unlike today.
- ✓ In past there were no boundaries as people could settle anywhere unlike today.

THE PEOPLE OF AFRICA

What is an ethnic group?

An ethnic group is a group of people with the same origin, major occupation and speak related languages.

*Note: An ethnic group is also called **a tribal group**.*

Give the meaning of the following terms;

*a) **Ethnicity**: Is the fact of belonging to a particular race.*
*b) **Ethnology**: Is the scientific study of human races.*
*c) **A tribe**: Is a group of people with the same origin, culture, and speak the same language.*
*d) **A clan**: Is a group of people with the same forefather/ ancestors.*

State any four characteristics of ethnic groups.

- ✓ They have similar origins.
- ✓ They speak related languages.
- ✓ They have related cultural practices.
- ✓ They have related economic activities.
- ✓ They have related traditional beliefs.
- ✓ They have related political organization.

Who were the original inhabitants of following regions of Africa?

a) North Africa - Berbers
b) Central Africa - pygmies
c) East Africa - Bushman
d) Southern Africa - Khoisans

Outline examples ethnic groups in Africa.

- ✓ Bantu
- ✓ Nilotes
- ✓ Cushites
- ✓ Semites
- ✓ Berbers
- ✓ Sudanic
- ✓ Khoisans

The Bantu

Who are Bantu?

- ✓ Bantu is a group of people with a common root word "**NTU**".

What does the word "NTU" mean?

- ✓ People

Name the largest ethnic group in Africa.

- ✓ Bantu

Name the original homeland/ cradle land of the Bantu.

- ✓ Cameroon highlands.

What is the major economic activity/ occupation of the Bantu?

- ✓ Crop growing

Give any two reasons why the Bantu settles in the interlacustrine region.

- ✓ To get fertile land for crop growing.
- ✓ There was good climate.

Mention the sub-groups of Bantu in Africa.

- ✓ The Eastern Bantu of East Africa.
- ✓ The Western Bantu of East Africa.
- ✓ The Shona
- ✓ The Sotho
- ✓ The Ambo-Herero

Name two sub-groups of Bantu who migrated from Ethiopian highlands to East Africa.

- ✓ The Eastern Bantu of East Africa
- ✓ The Western Bantu of East Africa

The Eastern Bantu of East Africa

- ✓ They divided themselves into two groups and some moved to Tanzania while others to Kenya.

Give any four Bantu tribes in Kenya.

- ✓ Kikuyu
- ✓ Luhya
- ✓ Akamba
- ✓ Teita
- ✓ Meru
- ✓ Mbeere
- ✓ Gusii
- ✓ Kuria
- ✓ Pokomo.

Mention any four Bantu tribes in Tanzania.

- ✓ Ngoni
- ✓ Nyamwezi
- ✓ Yao
- ✓ Chagga
- ✓ Gogo
- ✓ Sukuma
- ✓ Hehe
- ✓ Makonde
- ✓ Wazanaki
- ✓ Wahaya
- ✓ Zaramo
- ✓ Washamba
- ✓ Fipa.

The Western Bantu of East Africa

- ✓ This group of Bantu settled in Uganda.

Mention any four Bantu tribes in Uganda.

- ✓ Busoga
- ✓ Baganda
- ✓ Batoro
- ✓ Banyankole
- ✓ Bakiga
- ✓ Bagwere

Name the last group of the Bantu to enter East Africa.
- ✓ Ngoni

Note: *They migrated from South Africa because of* ***Shaka zulu wars.***
Bantu first settled in DRC before coming to East Africa. In DRC, Bantu had settled in place called ***Congo basin.***

Name three sub-groups of Bantu who moved from Cameroon highlands southern Africa.
- ✓ The Shona
- ✓ The Sotho
- ✓ The Ambo – Herero.

Name the first sub-group of Bantu to move from Central Africa to Southern Africa.
- ✓ The Shona

Name the country where the Shona settled in southern Africa.
- ✓ Zimbabwe.

Name the second sub-group of Bantu to move from Central Africa to Southern Africa.
- ✓ The Sotho

Name two countries where the Sotho settled in southern Africa.
- ✓ Botswana
- ✓ Lesotho

Name the last sub-group of Bantu to move from Central Africa to Southern Africa.
- ✓ The Ambo-Herero

Name the country where the Ambo-Herero settled in southern Africa.
- ✓ Zambia.

Mention the Bantu tribes in South Africa.
- ✓ Zulu
- ✓ Xhosa
- ✓ Ndebele
- ✓ Sotho
- ✓ Venda
- ✓ Tswana

State any four reasons why the Bantu migrated from their cradle land.
- ✓ Overpopulation in their cradle land.
- ✓ Pests and diseases in their cradle land.
- ✓ Prolonged drought in their cradle land.
- ✓ Internal and external wars in their cradle land.
- ✓ Love for adventure.
- ✓ To look for good climate.
- ✓ To look for fertile land for crop growing.

Name the countries where Bantu settled in Africa.

Country	***Geographical region***
Uganda	East Africa
Kenya	East Africa
Tanzania	East Africa
DRC	Central Africa
Congo	Central Africa
Zambia	Southern Africa
Lesotho	Southern Africa
Botswana	Southern Africa
Zimbabwe	Southern Africa
Angola	Southern Africa
Mozambique	Southern Africa

Give four ways Africans politically organized themselves.
- ✓ They formed kingdoms.
- ✓ They formed chiefdoms.
- ✓ They formed empires.
- ✓ Clan systems.

Kingdoms in Africa

Eastern	Western	Central	Southern
✓ Buganda	✓ Ghana	✓ Great Zimbabwe	✓ Zulu kon
✓ Busoga	✓ Songhai	✓ Luba- Lunda	
✓ Bunyoro	✓ Benin	✓ Rwanda	
✓ Toro	✓ Kanem Bonu	✓ Urundi	
✓ Wanga	✓ Mali		
✓ Karagwe	✓ Asante		

Mention any three major ethnic groups in Ghana.
- ✓ Asante
- ✓ Fante
- ✓ Ga

Note: Asante *is the largest ethnic group in Ghana is*

State any three factors that enabled some of Bantu tribes to form kingdoms.
- ✓ They were organized.
- ✓ They were united.
- ✓ They were settled.

Mention four Bantu tribes formed kingdoms in Uganda.
- ✓ Baganda
- ✓ Batoro
- ✓ Banyoro
- ✓ Banyankole

Name the Bantu tribe that formed kingdom in Kenya (Wanga kingdom)
- ✓ Luyha

Note: Some Bantu tribes did not for kingdoms.

Give any four Bantu tribes which did not form kingdoms in Uganda
- ✓ Bagwere
- ✓ Bagisu
- ✓ Bakiga
- ✓ Samia

State three reasons why some Bantu tribes failed to form kingdoms.
- ✓ They were not organized.
- ✓ They were not united.
- ✓ They were not settled.

Give any four ways Africans economically organized themselves during pre-colonial rule.
- ✓ They carried out trade
- ✓ They carried out farming.
- ✓ They carried iron smelting.
- ✓ They carried out painting.

Give four positive effects for the Bantu migration in the areas they settled.
- ✓ They introduced new crops.
- ✓ They introduced better farming methods.
- ✓ They introduced new culture.
- ✓ They introduced new languages.
- ✓ They introduced iron working.
- ✓ They introduced centralized system of governance.
- ✓ They introduced new skills of farming, iron working and bark cloth marking.

State any two negative effects for the coming of the Bantu to East Africa.
- ✓ They displaced the inhabitants.
- ✓ Population increase.
- ✓ Conflicts with the inhabitants.

How did the coming of the Bantu affect the inhabitants?
- ✓ They displaced the inhabitants.

The Nilotes

Name the cradle land/homeland of the Nilotes.
- ✓ Bahr-el-Ghazel

Give one reason why the Nilotes are called so?
- ✓ Their original homeland is along the Nile valley.

Name the place where the Nilotes first settled in Uganda.
- ✓ Pubungu

Why Pubungu is still remembered in the history of the Nilotes?
- ✓ It where the Nilotes first settled in Uganda.

What is the major occupation of the Nilotes?
- ✓ Cattle keeping.

Name three sub-ethnic groups of the Nilotes.
- ✓ River Lake Nilotes.
- ✓ Plain Nilotes.
- ✓ Highland Nilotes.

The River Lake Nilotes

Name the cradle land of the River lake Nilotes.
- ✓ Bahr-el-Ghazel

What is the major occupation of the River lake Nilotes?
- ✓ Cattle keeping.

Mention the tribes that belong to the River lake Nilotes from;

Uganda	***South Sudan***	***Kenya***
✓ Acoli	✓ Dinka	✓ Jaluo
✓ Japadhola	✓ Shilluk	✓ Luo
✓ Alur	✓ Nuer	✓
✓ Labwor	✓	✓

***Note**: Rive Lake Nilotes are also called **Luo speakers** or **Nilotics**.*
The Luo speakers are found in Kenya and Tanzania.

The Plain Nilotes

What was the cradle land of the Plain Nilotes?
- ✓ Ethiopian highlands.

What is the major occupation of the Plain Nilotes?
- ✓ Cattle keeping.

Why Plain Nilotes are called so?
- ✓ They settled in plain areas.

Give one reason why the Plain Nilotes settled in plain areas.
- ✓ Plain areas had plenty of pasture for livestock.

Mention four tribes that belong that to the plain Nilotes.

Kenya	*Uganda*	*Tanzania*
✓ Masai	✓ Iteso	✓ Dodoth
✓ Turkana	✓ Karimojong	✓ Tepeth
✓ Pokot	✓ Kumam	✓ Jie
✓ Iteso	✓ Langi	
✓ Samburu	✓ Jie	

Note:
- ✓ *The Masai live in both Kenya and Tanzania.*
- ✓ *The Iteso live in both Uganda and Kenya.*
- ✓ *The Jie live in both Uganda and Tanzania.*
- ✓ *The Karimojong and Langi live only in Uganda.*
- ✓ *Plain Nilotes are also called the Nilo-Hamites.*

Why did the Nilo - Hamites change from pastoralism to mixed farming.
- ✓ They settled in areas with fertile soils.
- ✓ They settled in areas which receive reliable rainfall.
- ✓ They intermarried with Bantu and adopted their culture.
- ✓ Death of their animals due to animal diseases.

The Highland Nilotes

Name the cradle land of the Highland Nilotes.
- ✓ Ethiopian highlands.

Give one reason why the Highland Nilotes are called so.
- ✓ They settled in highland areas.

What is the major occupation of the Highland Nilotes?
- ✓ Cattle keeping.

Name four tribes that belong to highland Nilotes.
- ✓ Sabiny
- ✓ Pokot
- ✓ Kipsigis
- ✓ Nandi
- ✓ Tugen
- ✓ Sabaot
- ✓ Keiyo
- ✓ Marakwet

Note: *The Sabiny live in both Uganda and Kenya.*

State the reasons for the migration of the Nilotes.
- ✓ To look for water and pasture for their animals.
- ✓ Animal diseases in their cradle land.
- ✓ Pests and diseases in their cradle land.
- ✓ Internal and external conflicts in their cradle land.
- ✓ Prolonged drought in their cradle land.
- ✓ Over population in their cradle land.
- ✓ Famine in their cradle land.
- ✓ Love for adventure

Give any four positive effects for the migration of the Nilotes in the areas they settled.
- ✓ They introduced new languages.
- ✓ They introduced new culture.
- ✓ They introduced short horned cattle.

State any three negative effects for the migration of the Nilotes in the areas they settled.
- ✓ Population increase in the areas they settled.
- ✓ Displacement of the inhabitants.
- ✓ Downfall of some kingdoms and empire.

The Cushites

✓ *The Hamites are also called **Hamites.***

What was the cradle land of the Cushites?

✓ Asia

What was is the major occupation of the Hamites?

✓ Cattle keeping.

Name the first ethnic group to come to East Africa.

✓ Cushites

Name the ethnic group which started the idea of iron smelting in Africa.

✓ Cushites

Mention any four countries where the Cushites settled in Africa.

✓ Somalia
✓ Ethiopia
✓ Eritrea
✓ Djibouti
✓ Uganda
✓ Kenya
✓ Tanzania
✓ Rwanda

Name the place where the Cushites first settled in Ethiopia.

✓ Cush

Give any four tribes that belong to the Hamites in the following countries.

Kenya	***Somalia***	***Tanzania***	***Ethiopia***	***Rwanda***	***Uganda***	***DRC***
Somali	Somali	Iraqw	Oromo	Bahima	Bahima	Banyamulenge
Dahalo	Danakil	Sandawe	Ogaden	Tutsi		
Boran	Orgaden	Bunguni	Afar			
Oromo	Hawiyah	Mbugu	Galla			
Orma						
Rendille	✓ ***NOTE: Berbers of North Africa***					

Name the pastoral tribe that lives in North Africa.

✓ Berbers

Mention the tribes that belong to the Berbers in North Africa.

✓ Natusi
✓ Siwi
✓ Zenata
✓ Chenowi
✓ Mozabite
✓ Siwa

Which economic activities were carried out by Berbers before the coming of the Arabs in North Africa?

✓ Cattle keeping
✓ Hunting
✓ Crop growing

State any two effects for the intermarriages between the Berbers and the Arabs in North Africa.

✓ New races were formed.
✓ New languages were formed.

Mention any four countries occupied by the Berbers in North Africa.

✓ Morocco
✓ Tunisia
✓ Algeria
✓ Western Sahara

The Semites

What was the cradle land of the Semites?
- ✓ Arabia

What was the major occupation of the Semites?
- ✓ Cattle keeping

Mention any four countries where the Semites settled in Africa.
- ✓ Ethiopia
- ✓ Eritrea
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Morocco
- ✓ Algeria
- ✓ Tunisia
- ✓ Western Sahara
- ✓ Egypt
- ✓ Libya
- ✓ Sudan

Write down tribes that belong to the Semites in the following countries.

a) Ethiopia: Amhara, Bagara, Tigrean
b) Eritrea: Eritreans
c) Nubians of Sudan, Uganda, and Kenya.

Note; They speak Semitic language.

Give any three reasons for the coming of most the Arabs to Africa
- ✓ To trade.
- ✓ To spread Islam.
- ✓ To ran away from religion wars.

THE KHOISAN

Who were the inhabitants of South Africa before the coming of the Bantu?
- ✓ Khoisan

Name two tribes of the Khoisan people.
- ✓ The San
- ✓ The Khoi khoi

Note: *The San were called the* ***Bushmen*** *and the Khoikhoi were called the* ***Hottentots*** *by the European settlers.*

Mention the two main activities of the Khoisan people.
- ✓ Hunting ***(The San)***
- ✓ Cattle keeping ***(The Khoi khoi)***

Name two countries where the Khoisan people currently live.
- ✓ Botswana
- ✓ Namibia

Name the desert where the Khoisan people live.
- ✓ Kalahari Desert

Why did the Khoisan people migrate?
- ✓ To look for pasture and water for their animals.
- ✓ The invasion of the Bantu.
- ✓ The coming of the Europeans to the Cape Province.

What do we call the god of the Khoisan People?
- ✓ Kaggen

Note*: The Khoisan people speak related languages characterized by a click sound.*

The Pygmies

Name the group of people who live in the Equatorial rainforests of DRC.

- ✓ Pygmies

Give one reason why the Pygmies speak Bantu languages.

- ✓ They were influenced by Bantu.

State any three characteristics of the Pygmies.

- ✓ They are short.
- ✓ They have wide noses.
- ✓ They are dark skinned.

ASIANS

Name the continent where the Asians come from.

- ✓ Asia

Mention the countries where the Asians came from before entering Africa.

- ✓ India
- ✓ Malaysia
- ✓ China
- ✓ Indonesia

Give three sub-groups of Asians in Africa.

- ✓ Indians
- ✓ Malaysians
- ✓ Chinese

What was the major reason for the coming of the Asians to Africa?

- ✓ To work on European plantations in Natal Province.

What name is given to the descendants of Asians due to the intermarriages with the Africans?

- ✓ Coloureds

Mention the causes of early migration.

- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Overpopulation
- ✓ Pests and diseases
- ✓ Prolonged drought
- ✓ Love for adventure
- ✓ Internal and external conflicts
- ✓ Search for fertile soils
- ✓ Search for land for settlement

State any four factors that influenced the settlement of different ethnic groups.

- ✓ Climate of the area.
- ✓ Nature of the soils.
- ✓ Nature of economic activities of the ethnic group.
- ✓ Nature of the vegetation cover in an area.
- ✓ Drainage system of the area.
- ✓ Land coverage in the area.

How did the economic activities determine the settlement of different ethnic groups?

- ✓ They settled in areas which favoured their economic activities.

State the problems faced by early migrants during their migration.

- ✓ Poor transport.
- ✓ Shortage of food.
- ✓ Shortage of water.
- ✓ Hostile tribes.
- ✓ Epidemic diseases.
- ✓ Bad weathers conditions.
- ✓ Attacked by man eaters.
- ✓ Difficulty in crossing physical features

The whites in South Africa

Name the first group of Europeans to come to the coast of South Africa.

✓ Portuguese

Give one reason for the coming of the Portuguese to the coast of South Africa.

✓ To find a resting place of their sailors on their way to India.

Name the group of Europeans who established the Cape of Good Hope in South Africa.

✓ Portuguese

The Dutch in South Africa

Who were the descendants of the Dutch settlers in South Africa?

✓ Afrikaners

Which language is spoken by the Afrikaners?

✓ Afrikaans

Who were the inhabitants of South Africa before the coming of the Dutch?

✓ Khoisan

Why did the Dutch fight the Khoisan?

✓ The Dutch wanted to take the land of the Khoisan.

How did the coming of the Dutch at the Cape of Good Hope affect the Khoisan?

✓ The Khoisan were displaced.

Name the cradle land of the Dutch who came to Africa.

✓ Holland/Netherlands.

Who led the Dutch from Holland to the coat of South Africa?

✓ Jan van Riebeeck

Give the reasons for the coming of the Dutch to Africa.

✓ To find a sea rout to India.

What do we call the means of transport used by the Dutch to come to Africa?

✓ Haarlem

*Note: **Haarlem** hit a rock and sank into the Atlantic Ocean. Most sailors survived and swam towards the shores. (Cape of Good Hope)*
Jan van Riebeeck** encouraged the Dutchmen who had survived to construct temporary houses and cultivate at the **Cape of Good Hope** where they settled. The Dutch were also known as the **Boers.

State any four reasons why the Dutch settled at the Cape of Good Hope.

✓ The cape had fertile soils for crop growing.
✓ The cape had cool climate.
✓ The cape had freshwater.
✓ The cape had access to the sea for easy water transport.

Why did Jan van Riebeeck encourage Dutchmen to build temporary houses at the Cape of Good Hope?

✓ To get shelter

What does the word Boers mean?

✓ Famers

What was the major occupation of the Dutchmen?

✓ Crop growing

Why did Jan Van Riebeeck encourage the Dutchmen to cultivate at the Cape of Good Hope?
- ✓ The Cape had fertile soils for crop growing.
- ✓ The Cape had cool climate which favoured crop growing.
- ✓ To get food.

Name the first European to each the Cape of Good Hope.
- ✓ Bartholomew Diaz

Give one reason why Bartholomew Diaz called Hope of Good Hope "Cape of Storms".
- ✓ His ship was destroyed by storms at that place.

Note: Cape of Storms *was changed again to* ***Cape of Good Hope*** *by* ***King John II*** *of Portugal.*
The Cape of Good Hope was later changed to the ***Cape colony*** *by the Dutch.*

Why did *King John II of Portugal change Cape of Storms to Cape of Good Hope?*
- ✓ He thought that it would open up a route for greater wealth.

Name the first colony to be established in Africa.
- ✓ Cape colony

Name the group of people who established the first colony in Africa.
- ✓ Dutch

In which country was the first colony established in Africa?
- ✓ South Africa

Give any two reasons why Jan van Riebeeck funded the Dutch East Indian Company (DEIC)
- ✓ To carry out trade.
- ✓ To promote Dutch interests at the Cape of Good Hope.

Why did the Boers join the French in the cape colony?
- ✓ To grow grapes.
- ✓ To grow vegetables.

Note: *Grapes are used for making wine.*

The British in South Africa
State any two reasons why the British went to South Africa.
- ✓ To colonize South Africa.
- ✓ To control the sea route to India.

Give any two causes of the Dutch war in South Africa.
- ✓ They never wanted to be ruled by the British.
- ✓ They never wanted to lose their land to the British.

Give any two effects for the coming of the British to South Africa.
- ✓ Misunderstandings between the British and the Boers.
- ✓ Great Trek.

The Great Trek

What was Great Trek?
- ✓ Great Trek was the movement of the Boers from the coast to the interior of South Africa.

Why Great Trek was called so?
- ✓ The Boers moved a long distance from the coast to the interior of South Africa.

Who were the leaders of Great Trek?
- ✓ Piet Uys
- ✓ Piet Retief
- ✓ Gerrit Maritz
- ✓ Hendrik Potgieter
- ✓ Andries Pretorious

State any four causes of the Great Trek.
- ✓ The coming of the British at the Cape colony.
- ✓ The population increase at the Cape colony.
- ✓ The Boers never wanted to be ruled by the British.
- ✓ The Boers never wanted to stop slave trade.
- ✓ Introduction of English as the official language.
- ✓ High taxation by the British over the Boers.

Mention any three positive effects of the Great Trek.
- ✓ Minerals were discovered in South Africa.
- ✓ New states were formed in South Africa.
- ✓ Better farming methods were introduced.

State any four negative effects of the Great Trek.
- ✓ Intermarriages between the Boers and the natives.
- ✓ Population increase in the interior of South Africa.
- ✓ Africans lost their land in the interior of South Africa.
- ✓ Hatred between the British and the Boers.

Give any two effects of the intermarriages between the Boers and the natives.
- ✓ New races were introduced. ***(Afrikaners)***
- ✓ New languages were introduced**.** ***(Afrikaans)***

Name two minerals that were discovered during Great Trek.
- ✓ Diamonds
- ✓ Gold

Name three new states that were formed by the Dutch after the Great Trek.
- ✓ Orange Free State.
- ✓ Transvaal State
- ✓ Natal State

Outline the problems faced by Boers during the Great Trek.
- ✓ Hostile tribes
- ✓ Language burrier
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Attacks from man eaters
- ✓ Poor medical care
- ✓ Shortage of water
- ✓ Shortage of food
- ✓ Lack of shelter
- ✓ Moving long distances
- ✓ Fatigue

FOREIGN INFLUENCE IN AFRICA

What does the term foreign influence mean?
- ✓ Foreign influence refers to changes that were brought to Africa by foreigners.

Who are the foreigners?
- ✓ Foreigners are people who came to Africa form the different parts of the world with different reasons.

State any four changes brought by foreigners to Africa.
- ✓ Foreign religions.
- ✓ Foreign languages.
- ✓ Cash crop growing.
- ✓ Urban life.
- ✓ Modern transport and communication.

State any four reasons why foreigners went to Zanzibar.
- ✓ To get permission from the Sultan of Zanzibar.
- ✓ To get porters.
- ✓ To get guides.
- ✓ To get interpreters.
- ✓ To learn Kiswahili language.

State any one reason why Africa was called a dark continent by the Europeans.
- ✓ They had little information about the interior of Africa.

Give any four reasons why Africa took long to be known to the outside world.
- ✓ Africa had hot deserts.
- ✓ Africa had thick impenetrable forests.
- ✓ Africa had hostile tribes.
- ✓ Africa had huge mountains.
- ✓ Africa harbored dangerous wild animals.

State any four economic reasons for the coming of foreigners to Africa.
- ✓ To get raw materials for their home industries
- ✓ To get market for their goods.
- ✓ To carry out trade.
- ✓ To invest their surplus capital.
- ✓ To discover the short sea route to Indian.
- ✓ To carry out plantation farming.

State any four social reasons for the coming of foreigners to Africa.
- ✓ To spread religion.
- ✓ Love for adventure.
- ✓ To stop slave trade
- ✓ To get land for settlement.
- ✓ To study the geography of Africa.
- ✓ To settle excess population in their countries.

Give one political reason for the coming of foreigners Africa.
- ✓ To colonize Africa.
- ✓ To claim for protectorates.

Give any four groups of foreigners who came to Africa.
- ✓ Traders
- ✓ Missionaries
- ✓ Explorers
- ✓ Colonialists/administrators
- ✓ Settlers

Traders

Mention any four groups of traders who came to Africa.
- ✓ Arab traders
- ✓ Persian traders
- ✓ Indian traders
- ✓ European traders

The Arab traders

Name the first group of foreigners to come to Africa.
- ✓ Arabs

Name the continent where the Arab traders come from.
- ✓ Asia

Mention two countries in Asia where the Arab traders came from.
- ✓ Saudi Arabia
- ✓ Persia

What do we call the special boats used by the Arab traders to come to Africa?
- ✓ Dhows

How were monsoon winds important to Arab traders who came to Africa?

- ✓ Monsoon winds blew the Dhows of the Arabs across Indian Ocean to come to Africa.

Give any three reasons why Arabs came to Africa.

- ✓ To carry out trade.
- ✓ To spread Islam.
- ✓ To escape religious wars.

Mention the countries in Africa where the Arabs settled.

- ✓ Libya
- ✓ Algeria
- ✓ Egypt
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ Tunisia
- ✓ Morocco
- ✓ Western Sahara

Write down positive effects of the Arabs to Africa.

- ✓ They spread Islam
- ✓ They promoted trade
- ✓ They introduced zebu cows
- ✓ They introduced Swahili culture
- ✓ They introduced Arabic language
- ✓ They introduced new styles of building houses.
- ✓ They introduce new styles of dressing.
- ✓ They introduced new crops.
- ✓ They developed coastal towns.
- ✓ They established Zenj Empire.
- ✓ They linked East Africa to Saudi Arabia and Persia.

Mention any three crops thaw were introduced by the Arabs to Africa

- ✓ Cloves
- ✓ Rice
- ✓ Date

Name the coastal towns that were developed by the Arabs in Africa.

- ✓ Mombasa
- ✓ Zanzibar
- ✓ Mogadishu
- ✓ Kilwa
- ✓ Pemba
- ✓ Malindi
- ✓ Safala
- ✓ Mafia

Write down negative effects of the Arabs to Africa.

- ✓ They introduced slave trade.
- ✓ They led to population increase.
- ✓ They led erosion to African culture.
- ✓ Africans lost their land at the coast.
- ✓ They took Africa's minerals.

How did the coming of the Arabs affect the culture of Africa?

- ✓ Many Africans converted to Islam.
- ✓ The Arabs introduced new styles of dressing.
- ✓ Arabs intermarried with the Africans.

Give one way the coming of the Arabs affect the Berbers in North Africa?

- ✓ They displaced the Berbers.

Name the empire the Arabs established at the coast of East Africa.

- ✓ Zenj Empire

Why Zenj Empire was called so?

- ✓ It was occupied by black people.

What does the word Zenj Empire mean?

- ✓ Land of the black people

How did the Arab traders promote trade in Africa?

- ✓ They introduced new trade items.
- ✓ They introduced cowrie shells.

Why did Arabs take long to enter the inland/interior of Africa?
- ✓ They feared hostile tribes.
- ✓ They feared thick forests.
- ✓ They feared tropical diseases.
- ✓ Due to poor transport.
- ✓ Due to language problem.
- ✓ They got most of the goods from the coast.
- ✓ There was no direct route from the coast to the interior

Give any four reasons why Islam took long to spread in East Africa?
- ✓ Arabs were more interested in trade than spreading Islam.
- ✓ Arabs were hated for being agents of slave trade.
- ✓ Arabs were not favoured by colonialist like missionaries.
- ✓ Africans feared Islamic practices like fasting and circumcision.
- ✓ Islam was Arabic language which was difficult for Africans.

Mention the trade items/commodities of trade that were brought by Arabs to Africa.
- ✓ Guns
- ✓ Beads
- ✓ Mirrors
- ✓ Clothes
- ✓ Ornaments
- ✓ Cups
- ✓ Plates
- ✓ Glasses
- ✓ Glassware
- ✓ Swords

Mention any four items that the Arabs took from Africa
- ✓ Slaves
- ✓ Ivory
- ✓ Gold
- ✓ Salt
- ✓ Tortoiseshells
- ✓ Hides and skins

Slave trade

Give the meaning of the following terms.

a) slave trade
- ✓ Slave trade is the buying and selling of human beings.

b) Slavery
- ✓ Slavery is the possession of human beings without permission.

Mention nay four groups of people who took part (participated) in slave trade in Africa.
- ✓ Arab traders
- ✓ Dutch
- ✓ Khartoumers
- ✓ African chiefs and kings

Mention any four tribes participated in slave trade in East Africa.
- ✓ Baganda
- ✓ Yao
- ✓ Nyamwezi
- ✓ Hehe
- ✓ Akamba

Who were the most active African slave traders in East Africa?
- ✓ Yao

Name any four notorious slave traders in East Africa.
- ✓ Tippu Tip
- ✓ Fundikiri
- ✓ Msiri
- ✓ Abu Said

State the ways slaves were obtained/got in Africa.
- ✓ By raiding villages.
- ✓ Through tribal wars.
- ✓ Through direct attack.
- ✓ Through local chiefs and kings.
- ✓ Through barter trade.

Give any four countries where slaves from Africa were taken.
- ✓ France
- ✓ Britain
- ✓ Holland
- ✓ Portugal
- ✓ Spain
- ✓ America
- ✓ India.

Why were slaves taken to America?
- ✓ To work on plantations.
- ✓ To work on gold and silver mines.
- ✓ To work in industries.
- ✓ To be domestic workers.

State any three ways slaves were mistreated.
- ✓ Giving them little food.
- ✓ Working without pay.
- ✓ Beating them.

Name the largest coastal slave trade markets in East Africa.
- ✓ Zanzibar

Mention the largest inland slave trade market in East Africa.
- ✓ Tabora

What do we call the slave trade market which was found in Senegal in West Africa?
- ✓ Gore Island

State any four methods used to stop slave trade in Africa
- ✓ Signing treaties
- ✓ Constructing Uganda railway.
- ✓ Introducing of legitimate trade
- ✓ Through church leaders.
- ✓ Sending army to control movements of ships on the Indian Ocean.

Name the people who participated in the abolition of slave trade in Africa.
- ✓ William Wilberforce
- ✓ Granville Sharp
- ✓ Abraham Lincoln
- ✓ Adam Smiths
- ✓ Clarkson Thomas
- ✓ Henry Thornton
- ✓ Sir Samuel Baker
- ✓ Seyid Said the Sultan of Zanzibar

Name the British who started the move the move to stop slave trade in Africa.
- ✓ William Wilberforce

State any four reasons why slave trade was difficult to end/stop in Africa.
- ✓ It was profitable to traders and African chiefs and kings.
- ✓ There was great demand for slaves overseas.
- ✓ British had a small army to stop slave traders.
- ✓ Many Europeans wanted to continue so that they could get cheap labour.
- ✓ Poor transport which caused the slaves to be used as potters.
- ✓ The people who could stop it were also involved.

State any one reason why the African chiefs and kings did not want slave trade to end.
- ✓ They were benefiting from it.

How did the African chiefs and kings support slave trade?
- ✓ They allowed the Arabs to carry out slave trade in Africa.
- ✓ They sold the slaves to the Arab traders.

Mention three treaties that were signed to stop slave trade in East Africa.
- ✓ Moresby treaty
- ✓ Frère treaty
- ✓ Hammerton treaty

How did the construction of the Uganda railway help to stop slave trade?
- ✓ It saved slaves the burden of carrying goods from the interior to the coast.
- ✓ It made transport easier.

How did the church leaders help to stop slave trade?
- ✓ They preached against the evils slave trade.

What is legitimate trade?
- ✓ Legitimate trade is the legal trade which replaced slave trade.

Why was it necessary to stop slave trade?
- ✓ To reduce human suffering.
- ✓ It was against Christian teaching.
- ✓ Coming of the Industrial revolution.
- ✓ The declaration of the independence of America.

Give any four positive effects of slave trade.
- ✓ It benefited the African chiefs and kings.
- ✓ New trade items were brought to Africa.
- ✓ Africa's interior was mapped to outside world.
- ✓ It led to growth of coastal towns.
- ✓ It led to growth of some kingdoms.

Write down negative effects/evils of slave trade.
- ✓ Depopulation of Africa.
- ✓ Separation of families.
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Human suffering
- ✓ Displacement of people
- ✓ Death of people.
- ✓ Hatred among people
- ✓ Loss of African Culture.
- ✓ Inter-tribal wars led to insecurity.
- ✓ Destruction of property due to tribal wars.

What is barter trade?
- ✓ Barter trade is the exchange of goods for goods and services for services.

Why barter trade developed during pre-colonial period?
- ✓ There was no medium of exchange.
- ✓ Unity among the societies.
- ✓ Presence of many trade items.

Why was barter trade commonly practiced by the people of East Africa before the coming of Arabs?
- ✓ There was no medium of exchange.

State any four advantages of barter trade
- ✓ It is cheap.
- ✓ It promotes friendship.
- ✓ It creates chances of employment.
- ✓ It favours illiterate people.
- ✓ There are no currency difficulties.

State any four disadvantages of barter trade.
- ✓ It is hard store wealth.
- ✓ It is difficult to get customers.
- ✓ It is difficult to carry bulky goods.
- ✓ Some goods are difficult to divide.
- ✓ High quality goods are exchanged for low quality goods.
- ✓ There are no standard measures of value of goods.
- ✓ There is need for double co-incidence of wants.

Which type of trade replaced barter trade?
- ✓ Monetary trade.

Note: Monetary trade *is the buying and selling of goods using money as a medium of exchange.*

Long Distance trade
- ✓ Long distance trade was trade which was carried out between the people of the interior and those at the coast of East Africa.

Why long distance trade was called so?
- ✓ The traders were moving long distances.

Name the tribes that participated in long distance trade in the interior of East Africa.

Tanzania	Uganda	Kenya
✓ Nyamwezi	✓ Baganda	✓ Akamba
✓ Ngoni	✓ Banyoro	✓ Kikuyu
✓ Hehe	✓	✓
✓ Yao	✓	✓

Name any three people who greatly participated in long distance trade.
- ✓ Tiputipu
- ✓ Msiri
- ✓ Mirambo.

Which group of foreigners mainly participated in the long-distance trade at the coast?
- ✓ Arab traders

Why slaves were mainly brought at the coast during long distance trade?
- ✓ To be used for transport

What was the main means of transport used during long distance trade?
- ✓ Slaves

Mention any four trade items got from the interior during long distance trade.
- ✓ Ivory
- ✓ Turks
- ✓ Salt
- ✓ Slaves
- ✓ Hides
- ✓ Skins

Write down items of trade brought by Arab traders in interior during long distance trade.
- ✓ Carpets
- ✓ Spices
- ✓ Clothes
- ✓ Beads
- ✓ Ornaments
- ✓ Guns
- ✓ Mirrors
- ✓ Gunpowder
- ✓ Glasses
- ✓ Knives
- ✓ Swords
- ✓ Cowrie shells

State any four positive effects of long distance trade.
- ✓ New trade items were brought to the interior of East Africa.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings became rich.
- ✓ The interior of East Africa was opened to outside world.
- ✓ Developments of the East Africa coastal towns.
- ✓ It made the interior kingdoms to grow stronger after getting guns.

Mention the negative effects of long distance trade.
- ✓ Depopulation of East Africa.
- ✓ Human suffering due to slavery.
- ✓ Death of people.
- ✓ It encouraged slave trade.
- ✓ It led over exploitation of African resources
- ✓ Its encouraged foreigners' influence in East Africa.

Trans - Saharan trade
- ✓ This was the trade which was carried out between West Africa and North Africa across the Sahara desert.

Why was Trans – Saharan trade called so?
- ✓ It was carried out across the Sahara desert.

Name four tribes participated in the Trans - Saharan trade from West Africa.
- ✓ Tuaregs
- ✓ Hausa
- ✓ Asante
- ✓ Soninke
- ✓

Name four tribes participated in the Trans - Saharan trade from North Africa.
- ✓ Arabs
- ✓ Berbers
- ✓ Khartoumers
- ✓ Greek

Who were the main participates of the Trans – Saharan trade?
- ✓ Arabs

Give one reason why the traders moved in caravans during trans-Saharan trade.
- ✓ For safety.

*A **Caravan** is a large group of people moving at the same time for a particular purpose.*

Why did the traders build camps or rested around Oases during trans-Saharan trade?
- ✓ To get water for use.

What were the roles played by the Berbers/Africans during the trans- Saharan trade?
- ✓ They acted as the middlemen.
- ✓ They acted as guides.
- ✓ They opened up trade routes.
- ✓ They offered transport services.

Items of trade used in the trans- Saharan trade
- ✓ Salt
- ✓ Ivory
- ✓ Slaves
- ✓ Gold
- ✓ Beads
- ✓ Guns
- ✓ Clothes
- ✓ Mirrors
- ✓ Ornaments
- ✓ Glasses

What were the major trade items during trans-Saharan trade?
- ✓ Salt
- ✓ Gold

Give any four positive effects of the trans- Saharan trade.

- ✓ New trade items of trade were introduced.
- ✓ Growth of some empires in West Africa.(Mali, Songhai and Kanen- Bornu)
- ✓ Islam was spread in West Africa and North Africa.
- ✓ Development of towns and cities in West Africa.
- ✓ It promoted unity between West Africa and North Africa.

Write down negative effects of the trans- Saharan trade.

- ✓ Death of people.
- ✓ Human suffering
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Death of elephants for ivory.
- ✓ Overexploitation of Africa's minerals
- ✓ Separation of families.
- ✓ It encouraged slave trade.
- ✓ Depopulation of in some Africa.

Trans - Atlantic/Triangular trade

- ✓ This was trade which was carried out between Europe, Africa and America across the Atlantic Ocean.

It is also called triangular trade/ silent trade.

Why trans-Atlantic trade was also called triangular trade?

- ✓ It had three major routes which formed a triangular shape.

Why triangular trade was also called Trans – Atlantic trade?

- ✓ It was carried out across Atlantic Ocean.

Why triangular trade was also called silent trade?

- ✓ It involved the use of gestures.
- ✓ There was no clear medium of communication.

Mention three groups of people who involved/participated in triangular trade.

- ✓ British
- ✓ Portuguese
- ✓ Germans
- ✓ Dutch
- ✓ African kings and chiefs
- ✓ Arabs

Note: *The Arabs were the middlemen.*

Write down trade items of the triangular trade.

- ✓ Slaves
- ✓ Ivory
- ✓ Gold
- ✓ Beads
- ✓ Guns
- ✓ Clothes
- ✓ Beeswax
- ✓ Timber
- ✓ Tea
- ✓ Sugarcanes
- ✓ Cotton
- ✓ Coffee
- ✓ Silver
- ✓ Rice
- ✓ Gunpowder
- ✓ Kola nuts

What was the major trade item of Trans – Atlantic Trade?

- ✓ Slaves

Name three major trade routes of triangular trade.

- ✓ Europe to Africa.
- ✓ Africa to America.
- ✓ America to Europe.

Mention the trade items from Europe to Africa during Trans – Atlantic trade.

- ✓ Guns
- ✓ Clothes
- ✓ Gunpowder
- ✓ Necklace
- ✓ Earrings
- ✓ Iron bars

What the main trade item from Africa to America during Trans – Atlantic trade.
- ✓ Slaves
- ✓ Ivory

Name the trade items got from America to Europe during Trans – Atlantic trade.
- ✓ Sugarcanes
- ✓ Tobacco
- ✓ Tea
- ✓ Cotton
- ✓ Coffee
- ✓ Sliver
- ✓ Rice
- ✓ Timber
- ✓ Kola nuts
- ✓ Beeswax

What was the major trade item during the Trans - Atlantic trade?
- ✓ Slaves

Mention positive effects of Trans – Saharan trade.
- ✓ New trade items were introduced.
- ✓ Slave trade agents became richer.
- ✓ Africa was mapped to outside world.
- ✓ Africans were spread to other continents.
- ✓ New crops were introduced in Africa e.g. Cocoa from the Amazon forests.
- ✓ Africans who were taken to work mines and plantations gained skills of mining and plantation farming.

Outline negative effects of Trans – Atlantic trade.
- ✓ It encouraged slave trade.
- ✓ Depopulation of Africa.
- ✓ Human suffering.
- ✓ Death of people.
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Separation of families

Give one factor that led to decline of Trans – Atlantic trade.
- ✓ Abolition of slave trade.

Indian traders

Name the continent where the Indian traders came from.
- ✓ Asia

Mention two countries in Asia where the Indian traders came from to enter Africa.
- ✓ India
- ✓ Pakistan

Note: They had come to construct the Uganda railway and after its completion, some remained behind and opened up shops in Kampala.

Who were Banyans?
- ✓ Banyans were Indian money lenders.

Write short notes on the following people.

a) Aldina Visram
- ✓ He opened up the first shop in Kampala.

b) Nanji Khalid Mehta
- ✓ He opened up Lugazi sugar factory.

c) Muljibhai Madhivan
- ✓ He opened up Kakira sugar works in Jinja.

Give any four ways Indians have contributed to the economic development of Uganda.

- ✓ They provide jobs to Ugandans.
- ✓ They have built schools.
- ✓ They have built hospitals.
- ✓ They have opened up shops.
- ✓ They have opened up factories.
- ✓ They introduced sugarcane plantation farming.
- ✓ They started banking system.
- ✓ They introduced rupees.
- ✓ They constructed Uganda railway.
- ✓ They pay taxes to government of Uganda.

The Explorers

Who is an explorer?

- ✓ An explorer is a person who leaves his /her country to go to another country to study more about it.

Name the means of transport used by the explorers to come to Africa.

- ✓ Ships

State the reasons for the coming of most explorers to Africa.

- ✓ To study the geography of Africa.
- ✓ To find the source of river Nile.
- ✓ To find the short sea route to India.
- ✓ To discover the traditions in Africa.
- ✓ To pave way for colonialism.
- ✓ Love for adventure.
- ✓ To discover economic resources in Africa.

Name the organization that sent and sponsored most European explorers who came to Africa.

Region	Organization
East Africa	The Royal Geographical Society (RGS)
West Africa	The Africa Association (AA)
Central and Southern Africa	The Universities' Mission to Central Africa (UMCA)

Name the organization that was formed following the appeal of Dr. David Livingstone.

- ✓ The Universities' Mission to Central Africa.

State one way Royal Geographical Society was important to early explorers who came to Africa.

- ✓ It sponsored the early explorers.

Name the first group of European explorers to Africa.

- ✓ Portuguese explorers

What was the reason for the coming of the Portuguese explorers to Africa?

- ✓ To find a short sea route to Indian.

Why did the Portuguese want to find the short sea rout to India?

- ✓ To solve the problems faced by the overland route to the Fareast.
- ✓ To get spices from India.
- ✓ To get silk from India.

Mention three Portuguese explorers who came to Africa.

- ✓ Prince Henry the Navigator
- ✓ Bartholomew Diaz
- ✓ Vasco da Gama
- ✓ Pedro da Covila

Write short notes on the following Portuguese explorers.

a) Prince Henry the Navigator

- ✓ He sponsored some explorers.
- ✓ He started a school of sailors at Sagres.

How did Prince Henry the Navigator promote transport?

- ✓ He started a school of sailors at Sagres.
- ✓ He started shipbuilding at Sagres.

b) Bartholomew Diaz

✓ He was the first European explorer to reach the Cape of Good Hope in South Africa.

c) Vasco da Gama

✓ He discovered a short sea route from the coast to India.
Note: Vasco da Gama was only welcomed at Malindi

✓ *He was welcomed by the sultan of Malindi who gave him a guide called "**Ahmed Bin Majid**".*

✓ ***Ahmed Bin Majib** directed Vasco da Gama up to India.*

✓ ***Ahmed Bin Majib** showed Vasco da Gama the sea route to India.*

Mention the reasons why the Portuguese came at the coast East Africa. (Conquer the coast)

✓ To find a short sea route to India.
✓ To control the coastal trade.
✓ To spread Christianity.
✓ To find a resting place for their ships.
✓ To break off the Arabic domination at the coast.
✓ To love for adventure.

*Note: The headquarters of the Portuguese were in **Mozambique.***
Mombasa was their major town at the coast of East Africa

Why did the Portuguese settle at the coast of East Africa?

✓ To control the coastal trade.
✓ To get fertile soils for crop growing.
✓ To get coastal freshwater.
✓ To spread Christianity at the coast.

Why were the Arabs not happy with the arrival of the Portuguese at coast of East Africa?

✓ The Arabs feared European influence in coastal trade.
✓ The Arabs disliked the Christian religion.
✓ The Portuguese preached against Islamic faith.

Why did the Portuguese lose control over the coast of East Africa?

✓ They were very corrupt.
✓ They overtaxed the Africans and Arabs.
✓ They were very harsh and cruel to Africans.
✓ They had few administrators.
✓ Their headquarters were far from the coast.
✓ Failure to establish a proper administration base.
✓ They were more interested in their personal gains than in the people they ruled.
✓ They were frequently attacked by malaria, diarrhea and dysentery.
✓ They overtaxed Africans and Arabs.

Give any four positive effects of the Portuguese rule at the coast of East Africa.

✓ They spread Christianity
✓ They built fort Jesus
✓ They introduced new crop.
✓ They discovered the short from coast to India.
✓ They mapped Africa to the outside world

Name any four cops that were brought by the Portuguese at the coast.

✓ Oranges
✓ Potatoes
✓ Cassava
✓ Maize

Why did the Portuguese build Fort Jesus?

✓ To act as a military base.

How is Fort Jesus important to the economy of Kenya?
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income to Kenya.

Give three negative effects of the Portuguese at the coast of East Africa.
- ✓ They overtaxed the Africans.
- ✓ They destroyed the coastal trade.
- ✓ They led to downfall of the coastal towns.

Name the country in East Africa which was not affected by the Portuguese rule.
- ✓ Uganda

Name the European explorers who came to East Africa.
- ✓ John Speke
- ✓ Dr. David Livingstone
- ✓ Henry Morton Stanley
- ✓ Johannes Rebmann
- ✓ John Ludwig Krapf
- ✓ Count Samuel Teleki
- ✓ Sir Samuel Baker
- ✓ Jacob Ehardt
- ✓ Joseph Thompson

What was the major reason for the coming of most explorers to East Africa?
- ✓ To find the source of river Nile.

Why were Europeans interested in finding the source of River Nile?
- ✓ To have full control over River Nile.
- ✓ To control Nile valley countries.
- ✓ To find out whether River Nile was navigable from its source.

How did River Nile contribute to the coming of most explorers to Africa?
- ✓ Most explorers wanted to find the source of river Nile.

Name the town which was the main entrance of the explorers who came to East Africa.
- ✓ Bagamoyo

Why was Bagamoyo the main entrance of the early explorers to East Africa?
- ✓ It was a safer route for the early explorers.

Write short notes on the following explorers.

a) Dr. David Livingstone
- ✓ He made three journeys to Africa.
- ✓ He stopped slave trade in Central Africa.
- ✓ He treated people with sleeping sickness.
- ✓ He spread Christianity in West Africa.
- ✓ He saw and named Victoria Falls along River Zambezi.
- ✓ He was a medical doctor, Missionary and Explorer.
- ✓ He established work shops where Africans were taught practical skills.
- ✓ He was the first explorer to write reports about the evils of slave trade in Africa to Britain.

Why is Dr. David Livingstone considered as the greatest explorer in Africa?
- ✓ He spent much of his time in exploration work in Africa.

How did Dr. David Livingstone promote the health of people in Africa?
- ✓ He treated people with sleeping sickness.

How did Dr. David Livingstone stop slave trade in Central Africa?
- ✓ He wrote reports about the evils of slave trade to Britain

Name three lakes that were discovered by Dr. David Livingstone in Africa.
- ✓ Lake Malawi
- ✓ Lake Mweru
- ✓ Lake Bangwelu.

Name three rivers that were discovered by Dr. David Livingstone in Africa.
- ✓ River Zambezi
- ✓ River Limpopo
- ✓ River Lualaba

b) Sir Samuel Baker
- ✓ He tried to trace the source of River Nile from its mouth.
- ✓ He saw and named Lake Albert.
- ✓ He saw and named Murchison Falls.
- ✓ He stopped slave trade in Acoli.
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to come with his wife Africa.
- ✓ He was the first governor of the Equatorial Province.

Which African country sent Sir Samuel Baker to Uganda?
- ✓ Egypt

Why was Sir Samuel Baker sent to Uganda by Egypt?
- ✓ To colonize Uganda for Egypt.

Name the president who sent Sir Samuel Baker to colonize Uganda for Egypt.
- ✓ Khedive Ismael

Why is Sir Samuel Baker remembered in Acoli?
- ✓ He stopped slave trade in Acoli.

How did Sir Samuel Baker stop slave trade in Acoli?
- ✓ He guarded them against slave traders.

Why was Emin Pasha (Dr. Edward Schnitzer) disliked in Acoli?
- ✓ His soldiers were involved in raiding Acoli for slaves.

Name the place where Sir Samuel Bake met John Speke and James Grant in southern Sudan.
- ✓ Gondokoro

Name two forts built by Sir Samuel Baker in Uganda.
- ✓ Fort Patiko
- ✓ Fort Foweire

c) John Speke
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see the source of river Nile.
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Lake Victoria.
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to come to Uganda.

Why was John Speke and Richard Burton sent to Uganda?
- ✓ To find the source of river Nile.

Why did John Speke leave Richard Burton at Tabora as he was going Northwards in 1858?
- ✓ Richard Burton was sick.

Why did John Speke make the second journey to Africa with James Grant?
- ✓ To prove whether Lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.

Name the kingdom where John Speke and James Grant were welcomed.
- ✓ Karagwe kingdom

Why did John speak leave James Grant in Karagwe kindom?
- ✓ James grant was sick.

How was king Rumanika of Karagwe helpful to James Grant?
- ✓ King Rumanika cared for him when he fell sick.

Name any three gifts John Speke gave to Kabaka Muteesa in 1862.
- ✓ Rifle
- ✓ Knives
- ✓ Clothes

Name the organization that paid for the two journeys of John Speke to East Africa.
- ✓ Royal Geographical Society.

Name neighbouring country through which most explorers used to enter Uganda.
- ✓ Tanzania

d) Henry Morton Stanley
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see mount Rwenzori.
- ✓ He was the first European to see River Congo.
- ✓ He came to look for David Livingstone.
- ✓ He circumnavigated Lake Victoria to prove whether it was the source of River Nile.
- ✓ He wrote a letter asking Missionaries to come to Buganda.
- ✓ He named Rwenzori "**the mountains of the moon**"
- ✓ He saw and named Lake Edward and George.
- ✓ He rescued Emin Pasha from the Equatorial province.
- ✓ He worked as an administrator with the Belgians in Congo.

Give one reason why Henry Morton Stanley called Mount Rwenzori "mountain of the moon"
- ✓ Its peak had snow which appeared like a rising moon.

Name the Newspapers that sent and sponsored the first and the second journeys of Henry Morton Stanley to Africa
- ✓ Daily Telegraph of London - *paid for his first journey.*
- ✓ New York Herald of America - *paid for his second journey.*
- ✓ New York Tribune - *paid for his second journey.*

Note: The British government sponsored his third journey.
First journey he came to look for Dr. David Living Stone.
Second journey he came to complete the work of the early explorers.
Third journey he came to rescue Emin Pasha who had been captured in the Equatorial province.

Name the town where HM Stanley met Dr. David Livingstone.
- ✓ Ujiji

e) Ludwig Krapf
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Mount Kenya.
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see River Tana.

f) Johannes Rebmann
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Mount Kilimanjaro.

g) Count Samuel Teleki
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Lake Turkana.
- ✓ He saw and named Lake Stephanie in Ethiopia.

h) Jacob Ehardt
- ✓ He tried to draw the sketch map of East Africa.

i) Joseph Thompson
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Mount Elgon
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to cross Masai land successfully.
- ✓ He explored Lake Baringo.

What enabled Joseph Thompson to pass through the Masai land successfully?
- ✓ Masai had gone for cattle rustling.

Name any four European explorers who came to West Africa.
- ✓ Mungo Park
- ✓ Richard Lander
- ✓ John Lander
- ✓ Gordon Laing
- ✓ Mary Henrietta Kingsley

What was the major reason for the coming of most explorers to West Africa?
- ✓ To find the source of River Niger.

Write short notes on the following explorers.

a) Mungo Park
- ✓ He traced and discovered the source of River Niger.
- ✓ He drowned at Bussa Falls on River Niger.

b) Richard Lander and John Lander
- ✓ They were the first European explorers to reach the Niger Delta.

c) Gordon Laing
- ✓ He was first European explorer to reach Timbuktu trading centre in Mali.

d) Mary Henrietta Kingsley
- ✓ She was first female explorer to West Africa.
- ✓ She died of typhoid in West Africa.
- ✓ She wrote about African culture.
- ✓ She fought against tropical diseases in West Africa.
- ✓ She was the first European explorer to see mount Cameroon.

e) Hugh Clapperton
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Lake Chad.

***Note**: He explored North Africa.*

f) James Bruce
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Lake Tana.
- ✓ He was the first European explorer to see Blue Nile in Ethiopia.

***Note:** He explored Horn of Africa.*

Outline problems faced by early explorers in Africa.
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Hostile tribes
- ✓ Tropical diseases
- ✓ Language barrier
- ✓ Harsh climate
- ✓ Shortage of drugs
- ✓ Shortage of food
- ✓ They were attacked by man eaters

Why most explorers feared to enter East Africa through the Masai land in Kenya?
- ✓ The Masai were hostile

How did the explorers solve the problem of language barrier in Africa?
- ✓ They learnt Kiswahili at the coast before entering the interior.
- ✓ They used interpreters.

State any four positive effects of exploration in Africa.
- ✓ Africa mapped to the outside world.
- ✓ The source of River Nile was discovered.
- ✓ Short route from the coast to India was discovered.
- ✓ It encouraged the coming of the missionaries.

State any three negative effects of exploitation of Africa
- ✓ It led to colonization of Africa.
- ✓ Local names of physical features were changed.
- ✓ Overexploitation of Africa's minerals

How did the exploration work contribute to the colonization of Africa?
- ✓ It mapped Africa to the outside world
- ✓ The explorers gave information to the colonialists about wealth Africa.
- ✓ The explorers wrote reports about the wealth of Africa which encouraged the coming of the colonialists.
- ✓ It led to the coming of missionaries who paved ways for colonization of Africa.

Why there was no great exploration in North Africa?
- ✓ There were no attractive features for exploration.
- ✓ It was very hard to pass through hot Sahara desert.

The Missionaries
- ✓ A missionary is a person who leaves his/her country and goes to foreign country to preach the word of God.

Why did the missionaries come to Africa?
- ✓ To preach Christianity.
- ✓ To stop slave trade.
- ✓ To promote the health of Africans.
- ✓ To promote formal education.
- ✓ To spread western civilization.
- ✓ To fulfill the request kabaka Muteesa I.
- ✓ To introduce legitimate trade.
- ✓ To suppress the spread of Islam.

Mention any two groups of Christian missionaries who came to Africa.
- ✓ Protestant missionaries (Anglican missionaries).
- ✓ Roman Catholic missionaries (White fathers)

Name the first group of missionaries to come to Africa.
- ✓ Protestant missionaries (Anglican missionaries).

Name the organizations that sent the early missionaries to Africa.
- ✓ Church missionary society (CMS)
- ✓ London missionary society (LMS)
- ✓ Universities Mission of Central Africa (UMCA)
- ✓ German Lutheran Missionary Society
- ✓ Holy Ghost fathers
- ✓ Roman Catholic society
- ✓ Mill Hill fathers
- ✓ Jesuits Missionaries
- ✓ Church of Scotland Mission
- ✓ Verona Fathers

How did HM Stanley contribute to the coming of missionaries to Africa?
- ✓ He wrote the letter to invite the missionaries to Buganda on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I.

Name the person who took the letter to England inviting the missionaries to Buganda.
- ✓ Linant De Bellefonds

In which newspaper was the letter to invite the missionaries to Buganda published?
- ✓ Daily telegraph

Why did Kabaka Muteesa I invite the Christian missionaries to Buganda
- ✓ He wanted the missionaries to teach his people who to write and read.
- ✓ He wanted the missionaries to spread Christianity in Buganda
- ✓ He wanted to get guns from the missionaries.

Write down three Rs that were taught by missionaries in Uganda.
- ✓ Reading
- ✓ Writing
- ✓ Arithmetic

Why Kabaka Muteesa I turned against missionaries in Buganda
- ✓ They undermined his cultural practices.
- ✓ They never fulfilled his expectations.

Name the first Muganda missionary in DRC.
- ✓ Apollo Kivebulaya**.**

State positive effects of missionaries to Africa
- ✓ They built schools.
- ✓ They built churches.
- ✓ They built hospitals.
- ✓ They spread Christianity.
- ✓ They introduced formal education.
- ✓ They introduced western culture.
- ✓ They tried to stop slave trade.
- ✓ They introduce new crops.
- ✓ They founded towns for freed slaves.
- ✓ They constructed roads.

Give any four negative effects of missionaries to Africa.
- ✓ They destroyed African culture.
- ✓ They led to religious conflicts.
- ✓ They led to colonization of Africa.

How did the missionaries lead to colonization of Africa?
- ✓ They mapped Africa to outside world.
- ✓ They gave formation to colonialists about wealth Africa.
- ✓ They soften Africans' hearts by preaching the word of God.
- ✓ Colonialists used missionary stations as their headquarters.

Why did Kabaka Mwanga order the killing of the Uganda martyrs?
- ✓ They disobeyed him.

How did the missionaries solve the problem of language barrier in Africa?
- ✓ By teaching the Africans how to read and write.
- ✓ By using interpreters.

Write short notes on the following missionaries in Africa.

a) Johann Ludwig Krapf
- ✓ He built the mission station at Rabai Mpya near Mombasa.
- ✓ He translated New Testament to Kiswahili language.
- ✓ He wrote the first Swahili dictionary and grammar book.

How did Ludwing Krapf contribute to the spread of Christianity in East Africa?
- ✓ He built the mission station at Rabai Mpya near Mombasa.
- ✓ He translated New Testament to Swahili language.

What is the importance of Rabai Mpya in the history of Christianity in East Africa?
- ✓ It was the first Mission school in East Africa.
- ✓ It where Christian converts were trained and taught Christianity.

b) Johannes Rebmann
- ✓ He spread Christianity among the Chagga on the slopes of Mount Kilimanjaro.
- ✓ He wrote the first English to Kiswahili dictionary.

c) Dr. Steer
- ✓ He worked so hard among freed slaves at Zanzibar
- ✓ He taught freed slaves the skills of building and carpentry
- ✓ He built a large cathedral at Zanzibar.

d) Dr. David Livingstone
- ✓ He spread Christianity in Central, East and Southern Africa.

e) Bishop Alfred Tucker
- ✓ He solicited funds from CMS to the IBEACO when it ran bankrupt.

f) Dr. Albert Cook
- ✓ He built Mengo hospital
- ✓ He treated people with sleeping sickness.

g) Alexander Mackay
- ✓ He was the founder of Church Missionary Society.
- ✓ He built vocational schools.
- ✓ He built the first printing press at Natete.
- ✓ He taught people practical skills.

Why did Alexander Mackay build a printing press at Natete in Uganda?
- ✓ To print Bibles.
- ✓ To print prayer books

Mention any four practical skills Alexander Mackay taught people in Uganda.
- ✓ Carpentry
- ✓ Building
- ✓ Brick making
- ✓ Tailoring

h) Apollo Kivebulaya (Waswa Munubi)
- ✓ He spread Christianity in Toro and DRC
- ✓ He was referred to as the Apostle of the pygmies.

Why is Apollo Kivebulaya referred to as the apostle of the pygmies?
- ✓ He did great work among the Bambuti of DRC.

i) Father Simon Lourdel and Brother Amans
- ✓ They were the leaders of the Roman Catholic Missionaries who came to Africa in1879.

j) Rev. C.T Wilson and Shergold Smith
- ✓ They were the leaders of the protestant missionaries who came to Uganda in 1877.

Name any three Europeans who were both missionaries and explorers in Africa.
- ✓ Dr. David Livingstone
- ✓ Johann Ludwing Krapf
- ✓ Johannes Rebmann

How did the missionaries improve on the health of Africans?
- ✓ They built hospitals in Africa.
- ✓ They treated Africans with sleeping sickness.

How did the missionaries improve agriculture in Africa?
- ✓ They introduce new crops to Africa.

Mention the problems faced by the missionaries in Africa.
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Hostile tribes
- ✓ Tropical diseases
- ✓ Language barrier
- ✓ Harsh climate
- ✓ Shortage of food
- ✓ Shortage of drugs
- ✓ They were attacked by man eaters.

The Colonialists

What was the major reason for the coming of the colonialists to Africa?

- ✓ To colonize Africa.

Give the meaning of the following terms;

a) **Colonization** is a system where a country is politically and economically controlled by a more powerful country.

b) **Neocolonialism** is the control of political, economic and cultural affairs of under developed countries by developed countries through indirect means.

c) **A colony** is an inferior country ruled by a superior country politically and economically for permanent settlement.

d) **A Protectorate** is an inferior country ruled by a superior country with the aim of granting it independence at any time.

Mention any four countries that were European colonies in Africa

- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Algeria
- ✓ South Africa

Mention any four countries that were British protectorates in Africa.

- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ Lesotho
- ✓ Botswana

Why was it better to live in a protectorate than in a colony?

- ✓ African culture was preserved in a protectorate unlike in a colony.
- ✓ Traditional leaders in a protectorate were left with some power and authority unlike in a colony.

What advantage did a colony have over a protectorate?

- ✓ A colony had better social services than a protectorate.

Why was it easier for protectorates to get independence than colonies?

- ✓ The colonialists had permanent settlement in colonies unlike in protectorates.

Give any two political reasons why European powers were interested in colonizing of Africa.

- ✓ To get colonies
- ✓ To get prestige

State any four economic reasons why European powers were interested in colonizing of Africa.

- ✓ To get market for their goods.
- ✓ To get raw materials for their industries.
- ✓ To get cheap labour from Africa.
- ✓ To get minerals from Africa.
- ✓ To invests their surplus capital.

Give any four social factors why European powers were interested in colonizing of Africa.

- ✓ To stop slave trade.
- ✓ To get land for settlement.
- ✓ To protect the missionaries.
- ✓ To spread Christianity.
- ✓ Love for adventure.

State any three characteristics of colonial rule.

- ✓ African chiefs and kings were used to rule.
- ✓ Laws were made by the colonialists.
- ✓ Colonialists used divide and rule policy.

Give any four characteristics of colonial economy.
- ✓ Africans were overtaxed.
- ✓ Cash crops were grown.
- ✓ Forced labour was used.
- ✓ Fertile soils were preserved for Europeans.

THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF AFRICA.
- ✓ Scramble for Africa was the struggle among the European countries to get colonies in Africa.

Mention the European countries that scrambled for Africa.
- ✓ France
- ✓ Germany
- ✓ Britain
- ✓ Portugal
- ✓ Belgium
- ✓ Italy
- ✓ Spain

Why European powers scrambled for Africa?
- ✓ To get prestige.
- ✓ To get colonies.
- ✓ To end slave trade.
- ✓ To spread Christianity.
- ✓ To get land for settlement.
- ✓ To get market for their goods.
- ✓ To get raw materials for their industries.

Give any one effect of the scramble for the partition of Africa.
- ✓ Calling of Berlin conference of 1884.

Partition of Africa
- ✓ Partition of Africa was the division of African countries among the European countries.

State any three reasons why European powers partitioned Africa.
- ✓ To draw boundaries of Africa.
- ✓ To get colonies in Africa.
- ✓ To end conflicts among European countries.

Give any one effect of partition of Africa by the Europeans.
- ✓ Africans lost their full independence.
- ✓ Africa's minerals were over exploited.

The Berlin Conference of 1884

What was the Berlin Conference of 1884?
- ✓ Berlin conference of 1884 was the meeting held in Berlin the capital city of Germany by European powers to find a peaceful way of partitioning Africa.

Why the Berlin conference of 1884 was called so?
- ✓ It was held in Berlin the capital city of Germany.

How chaired the Berlin conference of 1814?
- ✓ Chancellor Otto von Bismarck.

How did chancellor Otto von Bismarck contribute to the colonization of Africa?
- ✓ He chaired the Berlin conference of 1884 which led to partition of Africa among European powers.

Why was the Berlin conference of 1884 held?
- ✓ To find a peaceful way of partition Africa.
- ✓ To claim for protectorates and colonies in Africa.
- ✓ To start trading company in Africa.

What was the main reason for the calling of the Berlin conference of 1884?
- ✓ To find a peaceful way of partition Africa.

Name the European countries whose leaders attended the Berlin conference.

- ✓ Britain
- ✓ Belgium
- ✓ France
- ✓ Germany
- ✓ Italy
- ✓ Portugal
- ✓ Spain
- ✓ Poland

Give any four effects of the Berlin conference of 1814.

- ✓ Africa was partitioned.
- ✓ Africa was colonized.
- ✓ Trading companies were started in Africa.
- ✓ More Europeans were encouraged to come to Africa.
- ✓ The boundaries of African countries were drawn.

How did the Berlin conference of 1884 negatively affect Africa?

- ✓ More Europeans were encouraged to come to Africa.
- ✓ Africa was colonized
- ✓ Africa was partitioned.

How did the Africans benefit from the Berlin conference of 1884?

- ✓ Trading companies were started in Africa.
- ✓ The boundaries of African countries were drawn.

Trading Companies in Africa

What is company rule?

- ✓ This was a type of rule which granted charter to trading companies to control colonies on behalf of the colonial government.

Name the trading companies that operated in the following regions of Africa.

Region	***Trading company***	***Founder***
East Africa	Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACo)	William Mackinnon
	Germany East Africa Company (GEACo)	Carl Peters
West Africa	Royal Niger Company (RNC)	Duke of York
Central Africa	British Central African Company (BCAC)	Leopold II of Belgium
Southern Africa	British South Africa Company (BSAC)	Cecil Rhodes

Write IBEACo in full.

- ✓ Imperial British East Africa Company.

Who was the founder of IBEACo?

- ✓ William Mackinnon

Who was the representative of IBEACo in Uganda?

- ✓ Capital FD Lugard

Why was Captain FD Lugard sent to Africa?

- ✓ To monitor the work of IBEACo in Uganda.

Give one reason why Captain FD Lugard remained in Uganda after withdraw of IBEACo.

- ✓ To guard the missionaries as requested by Bishop Alfred Tucker.

State any two reasons why Captain FD Lugard brought Sudanese soldiers to Uganda

- ✓ To promote peace and security in Uganda.
- ✓ To promote law and order in Uganda.

Name two countries in which IBEACo operated.

- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya

Where were the headquarters of IBEACo in East Africa?
- ✓ Mombasa in Kenya

Why IBEACo was formed?
- ✓ To carry out trade.
- ✓ To protect British spheres of influence.
- ✓ To protect the missionary work

Give any two economic reasons why was IBEACo formed.
- ✓ To carry out trade.
- ✓ To construct the Uganda railway.

Why did the British grant IBEACo charter to rule East Africa?
- ✓ To protect British spheres of influence.

Give any three reasons why IBEACo collapsed.
- ✓ It ran bankrupt.
- ✓ Its officials were very corrupt.
- ✓ Competition from other trading companies.

State any four reasons why IBEACo became bankrupt.
- ✓ It lacked potential source of income.
- ✓ Its officials wanted to be paid highly.
- ✓ Its officials were very corrupt.
- ✓ It got involved in civil wars which were costly.
- ✓ It got involved in administrative work which was costly.

How was the CMS important to the IBEACo?
- ✓ It funded the IBEACo when it ran bankrupt.

Name the British who gave IBEACo money when it ran bankrupt
- ✓ Bishop Alfred Tucker.

Write GEACo in full.
- ✓ Germany East Africa Company.

Who was the founder of the GEACo?
- ✓ Carl Peters

Note: *Carl Peters spearheaded colonialism in Tanzania.*

How did Carl Peters spearhead German rule in Tanganyika.
- ✓ He signing treaties with local chiefs and kings.

Name the country were GEACo operated in EAST Africa.
- ✓ Tanzania.

Why GEACo was formed?
- ✓ To carry out trade.
- ✓ To protect missionary work.
- ✓ To protect Germany spheres of influence.

State any four methods/means used by the colonialists to establish their rule in Africa.
- ✓ By signing treaties
- ✓ By use of force.
- ✓ By use of African collaborators.
- ✓ By constructing transport routes.
- ✓ Through trading companies.
- ✓ Through explorers.
- ✓ Through the missionaries.
- ✓ Divided and rule policy

State any four ways the colonialists used to extend their rule to other parts of Africa.
- ✓ By use of force.
- ✓ By use of collaborators.
- ✓ By signing treaties.
- ✓ By constructing transport routes.
- ✓ Through trading companies.

Give any four methods of administration used by colonialist in Africa.
- ✓ Direct rule
- ✓ Indirect rule
- ✓ Assimilation method

Direct rule
- ✓ Direct was a system of administration where the colonialists ruled the Africans by themselves.

Mention any four colonial powers that used direct rule their colonies in Africa.
- ✓ Germany
- ✓ France
- ✓ Portugal
- ✓ Britain
- ✓ Italy
- ✓ Belgium

Name the countries where direct rule was used in Africa.
- ✓ Tanganyika
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ Namibia
- ✓ Togo

Why Germans used direct rule in Tanzania
- ✓ They wanted to show their superiority.
- ✓ They wanted to exploit minerals.
- ✓ They were many in number.
- ✓ They wanted to promote their culture.
- ✓ They wanted to be effective.

How Germany rule was made unpopular in Tanganyika?
- ✓ By staging rebellions.
- ✓ By boycotting.
- ✓ By demonstrating.
- ✓ By rioting.
- ✓ By disrespecting German laws.

Why did the British use direct rule in Bunyoro?
- ✓ The Banyoro were rebellious.

Write down disadvantages of direct rule.
- ✓ Loss of African culture.
- ✓ African lost their independence.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings lost their powers.
- ✓ It increased rebellion in Africa.
- ✓ It was expensive to pay the officials.
- ✓ It promoted harsh administration.
- ✓ It limited the economic development of Africa.

How did direct rule affect the Africans?
- ✓ It limited the economic development of Africa.
- ✓ It promoted harsh administration.
- ✓ It increased rebellion in Africa.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings lost their powers.
- ✓ Africa's minerals were overexploited.
- ✓ African culture was eroded.

Name the countries that were colonized by Germany in Africa.
- ✓ Tanganyika
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ Togo
- ✓ Cameroon
- ✓ Namibia

Indirect rule

- ✓ This was a system of administration where the colonialists used African chiefs and kings to rule the natives on their behalf.

Name two countries where the British used indirect rule in Africa.

- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Nigeria

Name the British governors who introduce indirect rule in the following countries in Africa.

a) **Uganda** - Captain FD Lugard
b) **Nigeria** - Donald Cameron

Mention three areas where indirect rule in Uganda.

- ✓ Buganda
- ✓ Toro
- ✓ Ankole

Give any four reasons why indirect rule was used in Africa.

- ✓ It was cheap to pay the African chiefs and kings.
- ✓ To avoid rebellions.
- ✓ To solve the problem of shortage of labour.
- ✓ To solve the problem of language barrier.
- ✓ The colonialist never wanted to be hated by the Africans.
- ✓ The colonialist wanted the African kings and chiefs work as puppets.

State any four advantages of indirect rule.

- ✓ It was cheap to pay the African chiefs and kings.
- ✓ It reduced rebellion in Africa.
- ✓ It solved the problem of language barrier.
- ✓ It solved the problem of shortage of labour.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings gained leadership skills.

How did Africans benefit from indirect rule?

- ✓ It reduced rebellion in Africa.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings gained leadership skills.

How did indirect rule affect Africans negatively?

- ✓ Africans lost full independence.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings lost full powers.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings worked as puppets.

What are Anglophone?

- ✓ Anglophone are all English speaking countries.

Mention the countries that were colonized by British in Africa.

- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Botswana
- ✓ Swaziland
- ✓ Lesotho
- ✓ South Africa
- ✓ Egypt
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ Niger
- ✓ Zambia
- ✓ Sierra Leone
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Gambia

Assimilation method

- ✓ This was a system of administration where Africans were made to behave like the Europeans.

Name the colonial masters who used Assimilation method in their colonies in Africa.

- ✓ French

Why did French use assimilation method of administration in their colonies in Africa?
- ✓ They wanted to promote their culture.

How did Assimilation policy weaken Africans to resist colonial rule?
- ✓ Africans were made to behave like the Europeans hence failing to resist colonial rule.

What are Francophone?
- ✓ Francophone are French speaking countries.

Mention the countries that were French colonies in Africa.
- ✓ Ivory Coast
- ✓ Burkina Faso
- ✓ Cape Verde
- ✓ Senegal
- ✓ Guinea Bissau
- ✓ Algeria
- ✓ Mali
- ✓ Morocco
- ✓ Tunisia
- ✓ Benin
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Congo Republic
- ✓ Gabon
- ✓ Chad
- ✓ Central African Republic

Mention the countries that were colonized by the following European powers in Africa.

Portugal	Italy	Spain	Netherlands	Belgium
Angola	Libya	Western Sahara	Mauritius	DRC
Mozambique	Eritrea	Equatorial Guinea		
Sao Tome and Principe	Somalia			

What are empire Free States?
- ✓ Empire Free States are African countries which were not colonized.

Mention any two empire free states in Africa
- ✓ Liberia
- ✓ Ethiopia

a) Liberia

What does the word Liberia mean?
- ✓ Land of the freed slaves.

Note: Liberia was also not colonized.

Give any three reasons why Liberia was not colonized
- ✓ Liberia was a land for the freed black slaves.
- ✓ Liberia was overpopulated.
- ✓ Liberia was protected and supported by USA.

Apart from Liberia, name another country which was a land for the freed black slaves in Africa.
- ✓ Sierra Leone

b) Eritrea
- ✓ The formation of Eritrea affected Ethiopia politically, economically and geographically.

How did the formation of Eritrea affect Ethiopia Politically?
- ✓ Ethiopia reduced her size.

How did the formation of Eritrea affect Ethiopia economically?
- ✓ Ethiopia lost her resources.
- ✓ Ethiopia reduced her tax base

How did the formation of Eritrea affect Ethiopia geographically?
- ✓ Ethiopia became land locked country.

Name the country that made Ethiopia landlocked?
- ✓ Eritrea

How did Eritrea make Ethiopia a landlocked country?
- ✓ Eritrea got her separate independence from Ethiopia.

How did the independence of Eritrea affect Ethiopia?
- ✓ Ethiopia became landlocked.
- ✓ Ethiopia lost her resources.
- ✓ Ethiopia reduced her taxes base.
- ✓ Ethiopia reduced her size.

c) Ethiopia

What is the former name of Ethiopia?
- ✓ Abyssinia

How did Ethiopia become a land locked country?
- ✓ After Eritrea getting her independence.
- ✓ After separation of Eritrea from Ethiopia.

Name the European country which tried to colonize Ethiopia.
- ✓ Italy

Name the commonest type of transport used in Ethiopia
- ✓ Air transport.

Why air transport is commonly used in Ethiopia
- ✓ Ethiopia is a mountainous country.

Give any three reasons why was Ethiopia not colonized?
- ✓ Ethiopia had powerful leaders.
- ✓ Ethiopia had no natural resources.
- ✓ Ethiopia was a mountainous country.

How did Africans react to colonial rule?
- ✓ Some Africans collaborated with the colonialists.
- ✓ Some Africans resisted colonial rule.

Who were British Collaborators?
- ✓ British collaborators were the Africans who worked hand in hand with the British colonialists to rule Africa.

Name the Africans who collaborated with the British in Africa.
- ✓ Semei Kakungulu of Eastern Uganda
- ✓ Nuwa Mbaguta of Bunyoro
- ✓ James Miti of Bunyoro
- ✓ Omukama Kasagama of Toro
- ✓ Apollo Kaggwa of Buganda
- ✓ Kabaka Muteesa I of Buganda
- ✓ The Fante of Ghana
- ✓ Nabongo Mumia of Wanga kingdom
- ✓ Labon Lenana of Masai

Why did some African States/societies collaborate with the colonialist?
- ✓ They wanted to get protection.
- ✓ They wanted to be supported.
- ✓ They were weak to resist.
- ✓ They wanted to get gifts.
- ✓ Some kings never wanted to lose their kingships.

Name the Africans who Africans who resisted colonial rule in Africa
- ✓ Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda
- ✓ Omukama kabalega of Bunyoro
- ✓ Chief Awich of Acoli
- ✓ Chief Mkwawa of the Hehe
- ✓ Abushiri bin Salim of Tanzania
- ✓ Kinjekitire Ngwale of Tanganyika

State any four ways Africans resisted colonial rule in Africa.
- ✓ They staged rebellions.
- ✓ They staged boycotts.
- ✓ They staged strikes.
- ✓ They disobeyed colonial laws.
- ✓ They formed political parties.
- ✓ They demonstrated.
- ✓ They formed trade unions
- ✓ They formed nationalistic associations.

Why some African States /societies resisted colonial rule
- ✓ They never wanted to lose their powers.
- ✓ They never wanted to lose their independence.
- ✓ They were tired of forced labour.
- ✓ They were tired of paying high taxes.
- ✓ They were tired of racial segregation.
- ✓ They were not allowed to grow their own cash crops.
- ✓ They wanted to rule themselves
- ✓ They wanted to regain their land
- ✓ The colonialists did not respect African culture.
- ✓ The colonialists did not respect African leaders.
- ✓ The colonialists were harsh to Africans.

Why were Africans easily defeated by Europeans during their resistance?
- ✓ Europeans were more united than Africans
- ✓ Europeans had better fighting skills than Africans.
- ✓ Europeans had stronger weapons than Africans.
- ✓ Europeans were more organized than Africans.
- ✓ Betrayal of some Africans.

Write short notes on the following people.

Colonel Sir Henry Colville
- ✓ He fought and defeated Kabalega the king of Bunyoro.
- ✓ He brought Bunyoro under British rule.

Sir Harry Johnston
- ✓ He signed 1900 Buganda agreement on behalf of the British Government.

Sir Hesketh Bell
- ✓ He was the first British governor of Uganda.
- ✓ He introduced cotton seeds in Uganda.
- ✓ He constructed many roads in Uganda.
- ✓ He introduced the first ford car in Uganda.
- ✓ He linked Uganda railway from Jinja to Namasagali.

Why was Uganda railway extended from Jinja to Namasagali.
- ✓ To transport cotton to Jinja.

Why was Uganda railway extended to kasese?
- ✓ To transport copper from kilembe mine.

Why was Uganda railway extended to Pakwach?
- ✓ To transport cotton and tobacco.

Sir Frederick Jackson
- ✓ He governed Uganda during the First World War.
- ✓ He stopped Lamogi rebellion.

Sir Robert Thorne Corydon
- ✓ He formed the first legislative council (LEGCO) in 1921

Sir Geoffrey F Archer
- ✓ He opened up Makerere College.
- ✓ He promoted education in Uganda by building schools.

Sir Philip Mitchel
- ✓ He turned Makerere College to a University.

Sir Gerald Portal
- ✓ He recommended Uganda a British protectorate.

Sir Lord Roseberry
- ✓ He declared Uganda as a British protectorate.

Sir Charles Dundas
- ✓ He governed Uganda during the World War II.
- ✓ He drew development plan for Uganda.

Sir John Hathon Hall
- ✓ He stopped many riots in Uganda
- ✓ Africans were first presented on the LEGCO. (**1945)**
- ✓ The first political party was formed in Uganda during his term of office.

Sir Andrew Cohen
- ✓ He exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain. (**1953**)
- ✓ Parliamentary building was started during his term of office
- ✓ Radio Uganda was opened up during his term of office
- ✓ The own falls dam was completed during his term of office.

Sir Frederick Crawford
- ✓ The construction of the parliamentary building was completed during his term of office.
- ✓ The first elections were organized in Uganda during his term of office.
- ✓ The second general election was organized during his term of office.

Sir Walter Coutts
- ✓ He was the last colonial governor of Uganda.
- ✓ The last general elections to independence were held.

Write down positive effects of Colonial rule to Africa.
- ✓ New crops were introduced.
- ✓ Western culture was introduced.
- ✓ Modern laws were introduced.
- ✓ New languages were introduced.
- ✓ Hospitals were built.
- ✓ Schools were built.
- ✓ Roads were constructed.
- ✓ Christianity was spread

How did colonial rule negatively affect Africans?
- ✓ African leaders lost their powers and authority.
- ✓ Africans lost their land.
- ✓ African culture was eroded.
- ✓ Africans were forced to provide labour.
- ✓ Africans were overtaxed.
- ✓ African technology was destroyed.
- ✓ Africans were refused to grow their own cash crops.
- ✓ Africa's minerals were overexploited.
- ✓ Introduction of racial discrimination.

Give one reason why the colonialists overtaxed the Africans
- ✓ To get money to meet administrative costs.
- ✓ They never wanted Africans to develop economically.
- ✓ They wanted Africans to be busy in order to neglect participation in rebellions.
- ✓ They wanted to get cheap labour from Africans to enable them to get money to pay taxes.

State any one reason why the Africans were refused to grow their own cash crops.
- ✓ The Europeans wanted to get cheap labour from Africans.
- ✓ The Europeans feared competition for market from Africans.

Give any four political effects of colonial rule in Africa.
- ✓ African leaders lost their powers and authority.
- ✓ Introduction of racial discrimination.
- ✓ Introduction of modern laws.
- ✓ Creation of new States in Africa.
- ✓ Africans lost their independence.

State any four economic effects of colonial rule in Africa.
- ✓ New crops were introduced.
- ✓ Roads were constructed.
- ✓ Railways were constructed.
- ✓ Seaports were established.
- ✓ African technology was destroyed.
- ✓ Africans were refused to grow their own cash crops.
- ✓ Africa's minerals were overexploited.
- ✓ Discouraged industrial development in Africa.
- ✓ Development of cities and towns.
- ✓ Introduction of taxation.

Give any four social effects of colonial rule in Africa.
- ✓ African culture was eroded.
- ✓ Schools were built.
- ✓ Hospitals were built.
- ✓ Christianity was spread.
- ✓ New languages were introduced.
- ✓ Western culture was introduced.
- ✓ Intermarriages between Europeans and Africans.

NATIONALISM AND THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE

Give the meaning of the following term.

a) ***Nationalism*** *is one's great love for his /her country.*
b) ***Nationalism*** *is one's desire for his/her country to develop politically, socially and economically.*
c) ***Pan Africanism*** *is a spirit that seeks to unite African people into one African community.*
d) ***Patriotism*** *is a strong desire, love and willingness of a person to defend his/her country.*
e) ***A nationalist*** *is a person with great love and pride of his/her country.*
f) ***A Pan Africanist*** *is a person who seeks to unite African people into one African community.*
g) ***A nationalist*** *is a person with strong desire, love and willingness to defend his/her country.*

Give any four factors that led to the rise of African Nationalism.
- ✓ The influence of the First World War.
- ✓ The influence of the Second World War.
- ✓ The formation of political parties.
- ✓ The Pan-African Movement.
- ✓ Unfair colonial policies.
- ✓ Improved transport services.

Why Pan-African Movement was formed?
- ✓ To decolonize Africa.
- ✓ To fight for the rights of Africans.

Name the leading Pan Africanists who were in Africa.

Country	***Pan Africanist***
Uganda	Apollo Milton Obote
Kenya	Jomo Kenyatta
Tanzania	Mwalimu Julius Nyerere
Burundi	Prince Louis Rwagasole
Rwanda	Gregory Kayibanda
South Africa	Nelson Mandela
Ghana	Kwame Nkrumah
Ethiopia	Haile Selassie
Malawi	Hastings kamuzu Banda
Egypt	Gamal Abdel Nasser
Nigeria	Namdi Azikiwe
DRC	Patrice Lumumba
	Joseph Kasavubi

Mention the leading Pan-Africanists who were outside Africa.

- ✓ Marcus Garvey
- ✓ Booker T Washington
- ✓ Henry Sylvester Williams
- ✓ J. E. K Aggrey
- ✓ William E.Dubois
- ✓ George Padmore

Write down the roles of the following people in the struggle for the independence of Africa.

Marcus Garvey

- ✓ He encouraged Africans to startup businesses just like whites had done.
- ✓ He funded the Universal Negro Improved Association (UNIA).
- ✓ He designed the Pan-African flag.
- ✓ He promoted Pan-Africanism.

Why did Marcus Garvey encourage Africans to start up their own businesses?

- ✓ He believed that Africans could get political power after gaining economic strength.

How did Marcus Garvey promote Pan Africanism?

- ✓ He designed the Pan-African flag.

Booker T Washington

- ✓ He encouraged the Africans to cooperate and improve their welfare.
- ✓ He believed that education was a key factor in African progress towards nationalism.

Henry Sylvester Williams

- ✓ He funded the first Pan African congress in London.
- ✓ He worked as a lawyer for the poor Africans in court against the whites who were mistreating them in South Africa.

How did Henry Sylvester Williams promote the welfare of the Africans?

- ✓ He worked as a lawyer for the poor Africans in courts against the whites who were mistreating them in South Africa.
- ✓ He advocated for the rights of the blacks both in and outside Africa.
- ✓ He formed the Pan African Association to advocate for the rights of Africans.

Why Henry Sylvester Williams organized the Pan African congress in London?

- ✓ To foster the sense of unity among all Africans.
- ✓ To promote awareness about the rights of Africans.
- ✓ To discuss ways of helping Africans to attain their independence.
- ✓ To discuss matters of common interest affecting black people.

J. E. K Aggrey
- ✓ He encouraged the Africans to value education.

State one reason why J. E. K Aggrey encouraged the Africans to value education.
- ✓ To oppose the racism and discrimination of Africans in employment and political representation.

William E. Dubois
- ✓ He encouraged the Africans to unite and oppose the white domination.
- ✓ He organized the first Pan-African congress in America in 1919.

Why William E Dubois encouraged the Africans to unite and oppose the white domination?
- ✓ He wanted the Africans to know their rights and defend them.

George Padmore
- ✓ He organized the Manchester Pan African congress of 1945.

The Manchester conference of 1945

Name the Pan Africanist who organized the Manchester conference of 1945.
George Padmore

Why was the Manchester Pan African congress of 1945 organized?
- ✓ To find ways of decolonizing Africa.

Name the African leaders who attended the Manchester conference of 1945.
- ✓ Kwame Nkrumah
- ✓ Jomo Kenyatta
- ✓ Patrice Lumumba
- ✓ Hastings Kamuzu Banda
- ✓ Peter Abrahams

Kwame Nkrumah
- ✓ He was the first secretary of the first political party formed in Ghana.
- ✓ He was the first prime minister of Ghana.
- ✓ He was the first president of Ghana.
- ✓ He was the founder of the Convention People's Party (CPP)
- ✓ He organized boycott against colonial rule in Ghana
- ✓ He organized strikes and demonstrations against colonial rule in Ghana.
- ✓ He hosted the first Pan African Congress in Accra in 1958.
- ✓ He suggested the formation of OAU.
- ✓ He supported nationalistic struggles in Ethiopia and Kenya

Give any two economic contributions of Kwame Nkrumah in Ghana.
- ✓ He helped in the construction of Akosombo dam.
- ✓ He encouraged cocoa growing in Ghana.

What role was played by Kwame Nkrumah in the independence process of Ghana?
- ✓ He formed Convention People's Party which led Ghana to independence.
- ✓ He organized boycott against colonial rule in Ghana
- ✓ He organized strikes and demonstrations against colonial rule in Ghana.

Why is Kwame Nkrumah remembered in Ethiopia and Kenya?
- ✓ He supported nationalistic struggles in Ethiopia and Kenya

What role did Kwame Nkrumah play in the struggle for the independence of Africa?
- ✓ He hosted the first Pan African Congress in Accra in 1958.

The Accra conference of 1958

Name the first Pan African Congress to be held in Africa in 1958.

- ✓ Accra conference.

Name the Pan Africanist who organized first Pan African Congress in Accra in 1958.

- ✓ Kwame Nkrumah

In which town was first Pan African Congress held in Africa in 1958.

- ✓ Accra

Why was Accra conference of 1958 called so?

- ✓ It was held in Accra the capital city of Ghana.

Why was the Accra conference of 1958 organized?

- ✓ To ways of helping other African States to gain independence.

Name the African leaders who attended the Accra conference of 1958.

- ✓ Kwame Nkrumah
- ✓ Patrice Lumumba
- ✓ Haile Selassie
- ✓ Apollo Milton Obote
- ✓ Kenneth Kaunda
- ✓ Hastings Kamuzu Banda
- ✓ Idris Muhammad
- ✓ King Hassan II
- ✓ William Tolbert
- ✓ Tom Mboya
- ✓ Namdi Azikiwe

Kenneth Kaunda

- ✓ He formed United National Independence Party (UNIP).
- ✓ He led Zambia to her independence.

Namdi Azikiwe

- ✓ He formed the first Political Party in Nigeria.
- ✓ He was the first president of Nigeria.
- ✓ He demanded for the independence of Nigeria.
- ✓ He staged strikes and demonstrations against British rule in Nigeria.
- ✓ He used newspaper to demand for the independence of Nigeria.

Name the Pan Africanist who used newspapers to demand for the independence in Africa.

- ✓ Namdi Azikiwe

Name the newspaper that was used by Namdi Azikiwe to demand for the independence of Nigeria.

- ✓ Western pilot

Emperor Haile Selassie

- ✓ He was the first president of Ethiopia.
- ✓ He resisted Italy from colonizing Ethiopia.
- ✓ He promoted social services in Ethiopia.
- ✓ He hosted the first **OAU** conference in Addis Ababa.
- ✓ He was the first chairperson of **OAU.**
- ✓ He facilitated the building of **OAU** headquarters in Addis-Ababa.
- ✓ He supported independence struggles in countries like South Africa, Algeria, Kenya and Angola.

Jomo Kenyatta

- ✓ He was the first president and prime minister of Kenya.
- ✓ He struggled for the independence of Kenya through KANU.
- ✓ He was the political leader of Mau Mau rebellion.

Julius kambarege Nyerere

- ✓ He was the first president of Tanzania.
- ✓ He introduced Ujaama policy in Tanzania.
- ✓ He was the founder of TANU.
- ✓ He united Tanganyika and Zanzibar to form Tanzania.
- ✓ He constructed Hale Dam and Nyumba ya Mungu dam (economic contribution)

Dr. Apollo Milton Obote
- ✓ He was the first prime minister of independent Uganda.
- ✓ He was the first executive president of Uganda.
- ✓ He was the founder of Uganda People's Congress.
- ✓ He was one of the founder members of OAU.

Gamal Abdel Nasser
- ✓ He was the first president of Egypt.
- ✓ He was the founder of OAU.
- ✓ He completed the construction of the Aswan High dam.
- ✓ He Nationalized the Suez canal
- ✓ He carried out land reforms in Egypt.

Prince Louis Rwagasole
- ✓ He was the first prime minster of Burundi.
- ✓ He mobilized the people of Burundi to demand for independence.
- ✓ He formed Union for National Progress which led Burundi to independence.
- ✓ He refused the Africans to pay taxes to the Belgians.

Gregoire Kayibanda
- ✓ He was the first president of Rwanda.
- ✓ He formed PARMEHUTU which led Rwanda to independence

Write PARMEHUTU in full.
- ✓ The party of the Hutu Emancipation Movement.

Nelson Mandela
- ✓ He was imprisoned for 27 years on Robben Island in the Atlantic Ocean.
- ✓ He was first black African president of South Africa.
- ✓ He was the first African president to resign from power without force.
- ✓ He resisted Apartheid in South Africa.
- ✓ He formed Umukhonto Wesizwe to fight against apartheid.

Note: *Umukhonto Wesizwe was a military wing of African National Union.*

Name the African nationalists who was referred to as the legend of Robben Island.
- ✓ Nelson Mandela

Why was Nelson Mandela referred to as the legend of Robben Island?
- ✓ He was the first African to be imprisoned at Robben Island for a long time

Why was Nelson Mandela imprisoned for 27 years at Robben Island?
- ✓ He resisted Apartheid policy in South Africa.

Name the racist president of South Africa who released Nelson Mandela from prison.
- ✓ F.W De Klerk

Joseph Kasavubu
- ✓ He was the first president of DRC.
- ✓ He was the leader of CONAKAT.

Write CONAKAT in full.
- ✓ Confederation des Associations Tribales du Kataga

Patrice Lumumba
- ✓ He was the first prime minister of DRC.
- ✓ He formed Movement National Conglais.
- ✓ He attended Accra conference of 1958.
- ✓ He stages riots and demonstrations against Belgian rule in DRC.
- ✓ He opposed exploitation of natural resources by Belgians in DRC.

Ignatius Kangave Musaazi
- ✓ He formed the first political party in Uganda. (UNC)

Write UNC in full.
- ✓ Uganda National congress.

Joseph Kasolo
- ✓ He was the founder of Democratic Party.

Benedict Kiwanuka
- ✓ He was the first prime minister of pre-independent Uganda.
- ✓ He was the first chief minister of Uganda.
- ✓ He led Uganda to self-rule.
- ✓ He became the leader of DP.

Ronald Ngala
- ✓ He was one of the founder members of KANU.
- ✓ He demanded for the independence of Kenya.

Tom Mboya of Kenya
- ✓ He advocated for the release of Jomo Kenyatta from prison.
- ✓ He was one of the founder members of KANU.
- ✓ He chaired the first Pan-African conference in Ghana.

Country	*First president*	*Political party that led to independence*	*Year*
Ghana	Kwame Nkrumah	Convention People's Party (CPP)	1957
Zambia	Kenneth Kaunda	United National independence party(UNIP)	1964
Nigeria	Namdi Azikiwe	National Council for Nigeria and Cameroon (NCNC)	1960
Kenya	Jomo Kenyatta	Kenya African National Union (KANU)	1963
Tanzania	Julius K Nyerere	Tanganyika African National Union (TANU)	1961
Uganda	Sir Edward Muteesa II	Uganda People's Congress	1962
Egypt	Gamel Abdel Nasser	Council of the Revolution	1922
Burundi	Mwami Mwambutsa IV	Union for National Progress (UPRONA)	1962
Rwanda	Gregoire Kayibanda	PARMEHUTU	1962
South Africa	Nelson Mandela	African National Union (ANU)	1994
DRC	Joseph Kasavubu	CONAKAT	1960
Mozambique	Samola Machel		1975

Other nationalis

Idris Muhammad	Libya		Hassan Mwinyi	Tanganyika
Hastings kamuzu Banda	Malawi		Oscar Kambone	Tanganyika
Haile Selassie	Ethiopia		J.B Danquah	Ghana
King Hassan II	Morocco			

State any methods used by the Pan-Africanists in their struggle for independence of Africa.
- ✓ By organizing meetings/conferences.
- ✓ Through media.

Note: *They could not stage direct armed struggle in Africa because they were outside Africa.*

How did the work of Pan Africanists help in the struggle for the independence in Africa?
- ✓ It increased African nationalism.
- ✓ It increased patriotism among Africans.
- ✓ It united Africans both in and outside Africa.
- ✓ It led to formation of OAU.

How did Pan-Africanists and African nationalists contribute to attaining of independence in Africa?
- ✓ They demanded for the rights of Africans.
- ✓ They mobilized Africans to fight for their independence.
- ✓ They promoted the welfare of Africans.
- ✓ The united the Africans.
- ✓ They formed OAU which promoted unity in Africa.

Give any four problems faced by Pan Africanist in their struggle for the independence of Africa.
- ✓ Shortage of funds.
- ✓ Difference in political ideas.
- ✓ Opposition from colonial governments.
- ✓ Lack of unity among African leaders.

THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE OF SOME AFRICAN COUNTRIES

What is independence?
- ✓ Independence is the state of being free from colonial rule.

State any four political reasons why the Africans demanded for their independence.
- ✓ To rule themselves
- ✓ To end harsh rule.
- ✓ To promote their democracy.
- ✓ African chiefs and kings wanted to regain their powers.

Give any four economic reasons why the Africans demanded for their independence.
- ✓ To end high taxation.
- ✓ To end forced labour.
- ✓ To grow their own cash crops.
- ✓ To control their natural resources.
- ✓ To regain their land.

Mention any four social reasons why the Africans demanded for their independence.
- ✓ To regain their dignity and respect.
- ✓ To end racial discrimination.
- ✓ To promote their human rights.
- ✓ To revive their culture.
- ✓ To end oppression.

Write down the ways/methods used by African nationalists to struggle for independence of Africa.
- ✓ They staged rebellions.
- ✓ They staged boycotts.
- ✓ They staged strikes.
- ✓ They disobeyed colonial laws.
- ✓ They formed political parties.
- ✓ They demonstrated.
- ✓ They formed trade unions
- ✓ They formed nationalistic associations.
- ✓ They exposed the evils of colonialism.
- ✓ They created independent churches.

Give two ways African countries demanded for their independence.
- ✓ Through peaceful means.
- ✓ Through armed struggle.

Name three African countries which attained their independence through peaceful means.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Nigeria

Name any four African countries which attained independence through forceful struggle.

- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Tanganyika
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Angola
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ South Africa

How was Kenya's struggle for the independence different from that of Uganda?

- ✓ Kenya got independence through armed struggle while Uganda through peaceful means.

Why did Tanganyika attain independence earlier than Kenya and Uganda?

- ✓ Tanganyika was more rebellious than Kenya and Uganda.
- ✓ Tanganyika was a mandate territory unlike Kenya and Uganda.
- ✓ Tanganyika was helped by United Nations unlike Kenya and Uganda.
- ✓ Tanganyika had one political party which promoted unity unlike Uganda.
- ✓ Julius Nyerere moved a world campaign for the independence of Tanganyika unlike Kenya and Uganda.

Who was the last British governor of Tanganyika?

- ✓ Richard Tumbull

Name the first country to get independence in Africa.

- ✓ Ghana

Name the first political party to be formed in Ghana.

- ✓ United Gold Coast Convention. (UGCC)

Give the reason why Ghana was called Gold Coast by the British.

- ✓ Ghana had many Gold deposits.

Why is J.B Donquah remembered in the history of Ghana?

- ✓ He formed the first political party in Ghana.

Why did Gold Coast change its name to Ghana at the time of independence?

- ✓ To remember and honour the old Ghana kingdom.

Give any two factors that enabled African Nationalists to succeed in their movement for the struggle of the independence of Africa

- ✓ They got support from super powers like USA.
- ✓ They had military skills from the first and second world wars.
- ✓ Improved transport services helped Africans to connect to different areas.

Write down the challenges faced by African nationalists in their Struggle for the Independence of Africa.

- ✓ Some Nationalists were exiled.
- ✓ Some Nationalists were imprisoned.
- ✓ Opposition from colonial governments.
- ✓ Betrayal of some Africans.
- ✓ Injustices in courts of law.
- ✓ Shortage of funds.
- ✓ Loss of lives.
- ✓ Oppression.
- ✓ Intimidation.

Give three methods used by the colonialists to weaken the African Nationalists.

- ✓ By exiling African nationalists.
- ✓ By imprisoning African nationalists.
- ✓ By killing African nationalists.

The Road TO Independence of Mozambique

Name the European country which colonized Mozambique.
- ✓ Portugal

State any four characteristics of Portuguese rule in Mozambique
- ✓ Forced labour
- ✓ Heavy taxation
- ✓ Racial segregation
- ✓ Oppression

Why did Portugal delay to grant Mozambique Independence?
Portugal wanted to continue exploiting her colonies

How did Mozambique attain her independence?
- ✓ Through armed struggle.

Name the freedom fighter body that was formed to struggle for the independence of Mozambique.
- ✓ FRELIMO

Write FRELIMO in full.
- ✓ Front for the Liberation of Mozambique

Who was the founder of FRELIMO?
- ✓ Eduado Chivambo Mondlane.

Why was FRELIMO formed?
- ✓ To struggle for the independence of Mozambique.

How did Eduado Chivambo Mondlane struggle for the independence of Mozambique?
- ✓ He formed FRELIMO which fought for the independence Mozambique.

How did FRELIMO struggle for the independence of Mozambique?
- ✓ It got involved in military activities against colonial rule in Mozambique.

Name two countries in Africa where FRELIMO fighters were given room for training.
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Algeria

What role did Julius Nyerere play in the independence process of Mozambique?
- ✓ He gave room for the training of the FRELIMO soldiers.

Apartheid policy in South Africa

What was apartheid policy?
- ✓ Apartheid was segregation of people according to race, tribe or colour.

Note: *This policy was called* ***Colourbar*** *in Kenya.*

Name the group of people who introduce Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- ✓ Afrikaners.

Mention any four groups of people who were in South Africa during Apartheid policy.
- ✓ Blacks
- ✓ Whites
- ✓ Asians
- ✓ Coloureds
- ✓ Afrikaners

How apartheid was practiced in South Africa.
- ✓ Blacks were not allowed to participate in politics.
- ✓ Blacks were not allowed to get quality education.
- ✓ Blacks were not allowed to marry Europeans.
- ✓ Blacks were not represented on LEGCO.
- ✓ Blacks lived in Bantustans.
- ✓ There were separate schools for blacks and whites.
- ✓ There were separate churches for blacks and whites.
- ✓ There were separate roads for blacks and whites.
- ✓ There were separate hospitals for blacks and whites.
- ✓ Blacks were not allowed to move out of their homes without pass identity cards.

How did Apartheid negatively affect South Africa?
- ✓ South Africa was suspended from international organizations.
- ✓ It worsened the relationship between South Africa and her neighbours.
- ✓ It created disunity among the people of South Africa.
- ✓ It led to violation of human rights in South Africa.

Why were blacks in South Africa not happy with Apartheid laws?
- ✓ They segregated the Blacks.
- ✓ They oppressed the Blacks.
- ✓ They were unjust to the Blacks.
- ✓ They were cruel and harsh to the Blacks.

How did apartheid policy negatively affect the Blacks in South Africa?
- ✓ Loss of lives**.**
- ✓ Bantustans were created.
- ✓ Some Africans were imprisoned.
- ✓ Africans received poor education.
- ✓ Africans got poor health services.

What were Bantustans?
- ✓ Bantustans were places where the Africans lived during Apartheid policy in South Africa.

Give any two reasons why Bantustans were formed in South Africa.
- ✓ To restrict the movement of Africans.
- ✓ To confine Africans.

Mention any four Bantustans that were created in South Africa.
- ✓ Kwazulu
- ✓ Venda
- ✓ Lebowa
- ✓ Gazankulu
- ✓ Swazi
- ✓ Transkei
- ✓ Ciskei
- ✓ Qwaqwa

Give any four problems faced by Africans in Bantustans.
- ✓ Poverty
- ✓ Overcrowding
- ✓ Soil infertility
- ✓ Lack of enough land
- ✓ Poor social services
- ✓ Unemployment
- ✓ Poor housing
- ✓ High spread of diseases
- ✓ Poor sanitation
- ✓ Shortage of food

What were Townships?
- ✓ Townships were undeveloped racially segregated urban areas during apartheid in South Africa.

Note: *Townships were also called locations/Lokasies.*

Name any two townships that were in South Africa during apartheid.
- ✓ Soweto
- ✓ Johannesburg.

Name three groups of people who lived in Townships during apartheid in South Africa.
- ✓ Coloreds
- ✓ Asians
- ✓ Blacks

State any four factors that contributed to end of apartheid in South Africa.
- ✓ The influence of African nationalism.
- ✓ The formation of Frontline States.
- ✓ The pressure of OAU and UN.

How did Africans resist apartheid in South Africa?
- ✓ They staged strikes and boycotts.
- ✓ They formed political parties to oppose apartheid.
- ✓ They stopped to respecting apartheid laws.
- ✓ They composed songs against apartheid
- ✓ They wrote articles in newspapers to condemn apartheid.
- ✓ They formed frontline States to counteract apartheid.
- ✓ Church leaders preached against apartheid.
- ✓ Nelson Mandela and others formed Umukhonto Wesizwe.
- ✓ Children walked out of school because they were taught in Afrikaans instead of English.

Name the personalities who fought against Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- ✓ Nelson Mandela
- ✓ Bishop Desmond Tutu
- ✓ Izaka Seme
- ✓ Oliver Tambo
- ✓ Robert Sebukwe
- ✓ Chief Albert Luthuri
- ✓ Chris Han
- ✓ Steve Biko

How did the following people contribute towards the end of apartheid in South Africa?

a) Izaka Seme
- ✓ He founded African National Congress which led South Africa independence.

b) Bishop Desmond Tutu
- ✓ He chaired the truth and reconciliation commission in South Africa.
- ✓ He preached against Apartheid policy in South Africa.

Why was the Truth and Reconciliation Commission established in South Africa after the end of apartheid?
- ✓ To foster unity between the blacks and the whites.

How did Bishop Desmond Tutu promote unity in South Africa?
- ✓ He chaired the Truth and Reconciliation Commission in South Africa.

F.W. de Klerk
- ✓ He was the last racist president of South Africa.
- ✓ He released Nelson Mandela from prison.
- ✓ He organized the first elections in South Africa.
- ✓ He accepted to hand over power and authority to Nelson Mandela after elections.

Nelson Mandela
- ✓ He formed Umukhonto Wesizwe to fight against apartheid.
- ✓ He staged boycotts and strikes against apartheid.

How did OAU help to end apartheid in South Africa?
- ✓ OAU placed trade sanctions on South Africa.
- ✓ OAU suspended South Africa as its member.
- ✓ OAU supported liberation movements against apartheid.

How did United Nations help to end apartheid in South Africa?
- ✓ UN placed trade sanctions on South Africa.
- ✓ UN denounced Bantustans in South Africa.
- ✓ UN passed resolutions condemning Apartheid policies.
- ✓ UN condemned Soweto Massacre.

Give one reason why school children started Soweto Massacre in South Africa.
- ✓ To oppose the teaching of Afrikaans in local schools.

Why were blacks in South Africa schools taught in Afrikaans?
- ✓ To make it as a medium of instruction in local schools.

How did Commonwealth Organization help to stop apartheid in South Africa?
- ✓ It suspended South Africa as its member.

Give one reason why Commonwealth Organization suspended South Africa as its member in 1961.
- ✓ South Africa was still affected by apartheid policy.

Frontline States
- ✓ Frontline states are African countries which helped South Africa to fight against apartheid policy.

Why the Frontlines states were called so?
- ✓ They spearheaded the fight against apartheid in South Africa

Give any four examples of Frontline States.
- ✓ Botswana
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Zambia
- ✓ Angola

Why were Frontline States formed?
- ✓ To help South Africa to fight against apartheid.

How did Frontline States help to end of apartheid in South Africa?
- ✓ They trained freedom fighters.
- ✓ They provided arms to the freedom fighters
- ✓ They put trade sanctions on South Africa
- ✓ They supported liberation movements against Apartheid policy.

DECOLONIZATION OF AFRICA
- ✓ Decolonization of Africa was the process of colonized Africans getting independence and self-rule.

State any four factors that contributed to the decolonization of Africa.
- ✓ The influence of the First World War
- ✓ The influence of the Second World War
- ✓ The influence of the Pan-Africanism.
- ✓ The pressure of United Nations.

How did the first and second world wars contribute to decolonization of Africa?
- ✓ Africans who went to fight learnt military skills.
- ✓ Africans who went to fight realized the need of fight for their independence.
- ✓ The Africans who went to fight realized the weakness of the whites.
- ✓ The Africans who went to fight learnt how to organize themselves and others.
- ✓ The wars gave Africans courage to fight for their independence
- ✓ The veterans helped to head demonstrations and riots against colonial rule in Africa.

POLITICAL PARTY SYSTEMS IN AFRICA

- ✓ A political party system is a way by which discussions and decisions on important matters of a country are made

What is a political party?

- ✓ A political party is a group of people who have the same idea of controlling and managing the affairs of a country.
- ✓ A political party is a group of people aiming at taking over political power through legal and known procedures

Give two systems of government that operate in Africa.

- ✓ Multipart system.
- ✓ Single party system.

What is multiparty System?

- ✓ Multiparty System is a system of government where many political parties operate in a country.

State any four advantages of multiparty System.

- ✓ It promotes democracy
- ✓ It controls dictatorship.
- ✓ It promotes respect for human rights.
- ✓ It promotes respect for hierarchy.
- ✓ It promotes delegation of power.
- ✓ It promotes development of government organs.

Give any four disadvantages of multiparty System.

- ✓ It promotes corruption.
- ✓ It promotes divide and rule policy.
- ✓ It encourages favouritism.
- ✓ It takes long decision making
- ✓ It leads to civil wars
- ✓ It leads to increased injustice
- ✓ It leads to vote rigging
- ✓ It promotes political party quarrels and conflicts.

What is a single party system?

- ✓ Single party system is a system of government where one political party operates in a country.

Give any four advantages of single party system.

- ✓ There are few injustices.
- ✓ There are few petitions.
- ✓ There are less conflicts.
- ✓ There are less power struggles.
- ✓ There is respect for leadership.
- ✓ It is easy to take decisions
- ✓ It promotes political stability
- ✓ It is easy to conduct elections

State any four disadvantages of single party system,

- ✓ It promotes dictatorship.
- ✓ It violates democracy
- ✓ It encourages coups.
- ✓ It leads to violation of human rights.
- ✓ There is limited accountability.
- ✓ New ideas are always unacceptable.

POST INDEPENDENCE AFRICA

✓ Post-Independence is the period after independence.

State any four changes that have taken place in Africa after independence.

✓ Formation of regional bodies.
✓ Creation of new States.
✓ Development of industries.
✓ Development of trade.
✓ Deployment of technology
✓ Improvement of transport and communication.

Organization of African Unity

Write OAU in full.

✓ Organization of African Unity.

When was OAU formed?

✓ 25th May 1963.

Where was the meeting for the formation of OAU held?

✓ Addis Ababa in Ethiopia.

Where were the headquarters of OAU found?

✓ Addis Ababa in Ethiopia.

write down some founder members of the OAU

Founder member	***Founder member country***
Kwame Nkrumah	Ghana
Haile Selassie	Ethiopia
Apollo Milton Obote	Uganda
Julius Nyerere	Tanzania
Herbert Maga	Benin
Namdi Azikiwe	Nigeria
Kamuzu Banda	Malawi
Leopold Senghor	Senegal
Jomo Kenyatta	Kenya
Milton Margay	Sierra Leone
Abdel Nasser	Egypt
Kenneth Kaunda	Zambia
King Hassan II	Morocco
Sekou Toure	Guinea

Give any three factors that helped the formation of OAU.

✓ Presence of strong African leaders.
✓ The influence of Pan-Africanism.
✓ The need to support African states that were still under colonial rule.

Give any four principles of OAU (Guidelines that would be followed by member States of OAU)

✓ All member states were independent and equal
✓ Member States had to respect the independence of other States
✓ Peaceful settlement of disputes among member States was emphasized.
✓ No State shall support political assassination and internal rebellions in other member States

State any four areas OAU agreed to cooperate in.
- ✓ Politics and foreign affairs
- ✓ Economics and trade
- ✓ Transport and communication
- ✓ Education and culture
- ✓ Defence and security
- ✓ Health and research

How did the following people contribute to the formation of OAU?

a) Dr. Kwame Nkrumah
- ✓ He suggested the formation of OAU

b) Herbert Maga
- ✓ He suggested the name OAU

c) Haile Selassie
- ✓ He facilitated the building of OAU headquarters

Who was the first chairperson of the OAU?
- ✓ Haile Selassie

Who was the last chairperson of OAU?
- ✓ Levi Mwanawasa

Who was the first Secretary General of OAU?
- ✓ Diallo Telli

Who was the last Secretary General of OAU?
- ✓ Amara Essy

What were aims/objectives of OAU? (Why was OAU formed?)
- ✓ To unite African countries.
- ✓ To end colonialism in Africa.
- ✓ To end apartheid in South Africa.
- ✓ To promote peace in Africa
- ✓ To develop Africa
- ✓ To defend the independence of African countries.
- ✓ To promote international cooperation.
- ✓ To improve the standards of living of the people of Africa
- ✓ To help other African countries which have not got independence also to be independent

Write down any four agencies of OAU.
- ✓ Pan African News Agency (PANA).
- ✓ Pan African Postal Union (PAPU)
- ✓ Organization of African Trade Union Unity (OATUU).
- ✓ Supreme Council for Sports in Africa. (SCSA)
- ✓ Union of African National Television and Radio Organizations (URTNA)

Give any four achievements of OAU.
- ✓ It ended colonialism in Africa.
- ✓ It gave birth to African Union.
- ✓ It made all African countries to be independent.
- ✓ It ended apartheid policy in South Africa.
- ✓ It tried to promote unity in African countries.
- ✓ It set up the African development bank.
- ✓ It solved border conflicts in Africa.

Write down the failures of OAU.
- ✓ It failed to stop civil wars in Africa.
- ✓ It failed to stop coups in Africa.
- ✓ It failed to set up a standing army.
- ✓ It failed to stop poverty in Africa.
- ✓ It failed to stop famine in Africa.
- ✓ It failed to end neo-colonialism in Africa.
- ✓ It failed to end Rwanda's genocide.
- ✓ It failed to end refugee problem.
- ✓ It failed to unite some African countries.
- ✓ It failed to solve the Debt burden issue.

Give any four problems/challenges faced by OAU.
- ✓ Shortage of funds.
- ✓ Lack of a standing army.
- ✓ Interference from developed countries.
- ✓ Disrespect from member states.
- ✓ Difference of political ideas among member states.

The African Union

Write AU in full.
- ✓ African Union.

Name the international organization which was formed to promote unity in Africa.
- ✓ African Union

Who suggested the idea for the transformation of OAU to AU?
- ✓ Muammar Gaddafi

Name the international organization which was formed to replace OAU.
- ✓ African Union

Why was OAU changed to AU?
- ✓ To create a stronger organization that would face the challenges of modern Africa.

When was AU launched?
- ✓ On 9th July, 2002.

How is Durban town in South Africa important to African Union?
- ✓ It is where AU was launched.

Where are the headquarters of AU found?
- ✓ Addis-Ababa in Ethiopia.

Name the last African country to join AU.
- ✓ Morocco

Give one reason why Morocco was not a member of AU.
- ✓ OAU declared Western Sahara as an independent State.

Mention the aims/objectives of AU (Why was AU formed?)
- ✓ To promote greater unity and solidarity.
- ✓ To support and defend African interests.
- ✓ To promote peace, security and stability in Africa.
- ✓ To promote democracy and good governance.
- ✓ To aid development in Africa.
- ✓ To promote and protect human rights.
- ✓ To end neocolonialism in Africa.
- ✓ To promote cooperation in Africa
- ✓ To improve the standards of living of the people of Africa

Write down agencies of AU.
- ✓ Pan African University (PAU)
- ✓ Pan African Institute for Education for Development (IPED)
- ✓ International Centre for Girl's and Women's Education in Africa (CIEFFA)
- ✓ Scientific Technical and Research Commission (STRC)
- ✓ Fund for African Women
- ✓ Pan African Training Centre on Statistics.
- ✓ African Civil Aviation Commission (AFCAC)
- ✓ African Airlines Association (AFRAA)
- ✓ African Telecommunications Union (ATU)
- ✓ Pan African Postal Union (PAPU)
- ✓ African Energy Commission (AFREC)
- ✓ African Commission of Nuclear Energy (AFCONE)
- ✓ African Minerals Development Centre (AMDC)
- ✓ Pan African Veterinary Vaccine Centre (PANVAC)
- ✓ African Risk Capacity (ARC)
- ✓ African Academy of Languages (ACALAN)
- ✓ African Union Sports Council (AACC)

Mention three financial institutions of AU.
- ✓ The African Central Bank.
- ✓ The African Monetary Fund.
- ✓ The African Investment Bank.

How is African Development Bank important to African countries?
- ✓ It provides loans to African countries.
- ✓ It funds developmental projects in African countries.

Mention the organs of African Union (AU)
- ✓ The assembly of the Union
- ✓ The Executive Council of the Union
- ✓ The Pan African Parliament
- ✓ The African Union Commission
- ✓ The Peace and Security Council
- ✓ The African Union Court of Justice
- ✓ The Economic, Social and Cultural Council

The Assembly of the Union
- ✓ It is the supreme organ of the African Union.
- ✓ It consists of Heads of States of AU member States.
- ✓ It is the main decision making organ of African Union.

***Note**: The chairperson of Assembly of the Union is elected every year.*

Who was the first chairperson of AU?
- ✓ Thamo Mbeki

Who is the current chairperson of AU?
Abdel Fattah el-Sisi

Give any two roles of Assembly of AU.
- ✓ It makes decision on the affairs affecting Africa.
- ✓ To monitor the chairperson of the AU.

What is the major role of the AU General assembly?
- ✓ To monitor the chairperson of the AU.

The Executive Council of the Union
- ✓ It is made up of all foreign ministers of the AU member States.

What is the main duty of the Executive Council of the Union?
- ✓ To coordinate and make decisions on policies of common interests.

The African Union Commission

- ✓ **Which organ of the AU replaced the secretariat of the OAU?**
  The African Union Commission

Name the organ that runs day today activities of AU.
- ✓ The African Union Commission

How many commissioners who make up the African Union commission?
- ✓ Eight commissioners.

Who was the first chairperson of the African Union Commission?
- ✓ Amara Essy

Who is the current chairperson of the African Union Commission?
- ✓ Moussa Faki

Give any four roles/duties of the African Union commission.
- ✓ To organize meetings for AU
- ✓ To run day today activities of AU
- ✓ To implement AU policies
- ✓ To make agenda for AU meetings
- ✓ It is responsible for the administration of AU

Peace and Security Council (PSC)
- ✓ It is concerned with Security in Africa.
- ✓ It prevents conflicts in AU member States.

Pan- African Parliament (PAP)
- ✓ PAP is the highest legislative body of the African Union.

Name the town where the headquarters of PAP are found.
- ✓ Midland in South Africa.

Who is the current president of the Pan African Parliament?
- ✓ Roger Nkodo Dang

State any four roles/duties of PAP.
- ✓ To make decisions on behalf of member States
- ✓ To advise organs of the AU
- ✓ To debate the continent's wide issues.
- ✓ To ensure full participation of the African people in the affairs of the continent.

The African Court of Justice
- ✓ It deals with general matters concerning with human rights in Africa.

Write down the problems/challenges affecting AU.
- ✓ Shortage of funds.
- ✓ Neocolonialism
- ✓ Poverty among Africans
- ✓ Large number of refugees.
- ✓ Corruption in Africa.
- ✓ Unemployment in Africa
- ✓ Constant civil wars in some member countries.
- ✓ Military coups in some member countries.
- ✓ Differences in political ideas of member States.
- ✓ Interference from developed countries

State any four possible solutions to the challenges affecting AU.
- ✓ Member States should pay their annual subscription fee in time.
- ✓ Promoting democracy to reduce civil wars.
- ✓ Promoting unity in Africa to reduce difference in political ideas.
- ✓ Promoting industrialization to reduce on over dependence on the developed countries.
- ✓ Promoting regional economic groupings.

REGIONAL ECONOMIC GROUPING
- ✓ These are groups of countries which come together to enjoy economic benefits.

What is a common market?
- ✓ A common market is an organization formed by countries with the aim of promoting trade.

Note: A regional body is also called;
- ✓ Economic bloc
- ✓ Trading bloc
- ✓ Common market
- ✓ Regional grouping
- ✓ An economic grouping

Why were regional bodies formed in Africa?
- ✓ To promote regional trade
- ✓ To promote transport and communication
- ✓ To promote political cooperation
- ✓ To promote industrialization
- ✓ To promote border security
- ✓ To fund developmental project
- ✓ To widen the market for goods
- ✓ To reduce trade barriers
- ✓ To create a common tariff
- ✓ To promote unity, peace and friendship
- ✓ To reduce dependence on developed countries

Give any three factors that make the formation of regional body successful.
- ✓ Member countries should by politically stable.
- ✓ Member countries should be close to one another.
- ✓ Member countries should be at least at the same level of economic development.

Write down advantages of regional bodies.
- ✓ They promote regional trade
- ✓ They create a wider market for goods
- ✓ They remove trade barriers
- ✓ They create job for people
- ✓ To create a common tariff
- ✓ They promote peace and stability
- ✓ They promote transport and communication
- ✓ They promote development among member countries
- ✓ They promote friendship among member countries
- ✓ They promote free movement of people within member countries.
- ✓ They improve on the standards of living of people in the region

How do countries benefit from being members of regional bodies?
How are regional bodies important to member countries?
- ✓ Member countries enjoy regional trade.
- ✓ Member countries get ready market for their goods.
- ✓ Member countries get what they can't produce.
- ✓ Member countries promote unity, cooperation, peace and friendship.
- ✓ People from member states get jobs
- ✓ People from member countries get free movement within the community.
- ✓ Regional bodies reduce trade barriers among member countries.

How do regional bodies promote trade in member countries?
- ✓ They reduce trade barriers in member countries.
- ✓ They a wider market for goods of member countries.
- ✓ They promote friendship among member countries.
- ✓ They promote free movement of labour in member countries.
- ✓ They reduce taxes on goods.
- ✓ They reduced tariffs on goods.
- ✓ They promote tourism in member countries.
- ✓ They promote transport and communication in member countries.

Give any four disadvantages of regional bodies.
- ✓ They produce similar goods.
- ✓ They are too large to manage.
- ✓ Removing taxes on goods reduces revenue of member countries.
- ✓ Free movement of labour may lead to brain storming in member countries.
- ✓ Free movement of labour encourages immigration which leads to population growth.
- ✓ Free movement of labour causes unemployment in some member countries.
- ✓ Free trade among member countries leads to importation of low quality goods.
- ✓ Free trade among member countries leads to profit repatriation.

Write down the problems/challenges faced by regional bodies in Africa.
- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Different political ideas
- ✓ Economic imbalance
- ✓ Language barrier
- ✓ Most of them are poor and lack technology
- ✓ Some countries produce similar goods
- ✓ Poor transport in some African countries
- ✓ Interference from developed counties
- ✓ Desire of prestige of member countries
- ✓ Misunderstandings among leaders
- ✓ Civil wars in some African countries

Give any four possible solutions to the problems faced by regional bodies in Africa.
- ✓ Establishing a common currency
- ✓ Improving transport and communication
- ✓ Working together to promote interdependence
- ✓ Promoting unity and stability
- ✓ Promoting proper accountability of funds
- ✓ Promoting cooperation and friendship
- ✓ Strengthening security in member States

Name the regional bodies that operate in Africa
- ✓ The East African Community (EAC)
- ✓ The Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA)
- ✓ The Economic Community for West African States (ECOWAS)
- ✓ The South African Development Community (SADC)
- ✓ The Inter-Governmental Authority on Development (IGAD)
- ✓ The Economic community for Central African States (ECCAS)

REGIONAL BODIES IN EAST AFRICA

Name the first regional body to be formed in East Africa in 1948.
- ✓ East African High Commission

*The East African High Commission was replaced by the **East African Community Services Organization**.*
*The East African Community services organization was replaced by the **East African Community in 1967.***

THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY

Write EAC in full.

✓ East African Community.

What is East African Community?

✓ The East African Community is an intergovernmental organization composed of six countries in the African Great Lakes region of eastern Africa.

Name the town the headquarters of the EAC are found

✓ Arusha in Tanzania

Name the founders of EAC in 1967

Member members	***Founder member Countries***
Milton Obote	Uganda
Jomo Kenyatta	Kenya
Julius Nyerere	Tanzania

Note*: EAC collapsed in 1977 and was officially revived in July 2001.*
Reasons for the formation of regional bodies are the very ones for the formation of EAC.

State any four reasons why EAC collapsed in 1977.

✓ Shortage of funds.
✓ Misunderstanding among leaders.
✓ Different political ideologies.
✓ Different political systems.
✓ Economic imbalance.
✓ Unequal distribution of gains.
✓ Bad decision of President Idi Amin Dada.

How did the collapse of EAC negatively affect the people of East Africa?

✓ Some people lost jobs.
✓ Common currency was removed.
✓ Common tariff was removed.
✓ Trade barriers increased.
✓ Smuggling increased.
✓ Free movement of people in East Africa was stopped

The Revival of the EAC in 2001

Name the pale where meeting for revival of EAC was held in 2001.

✓ Amri Abed memorial stadium in Arusha.

Name the presidents who revived the EAC

Member members	***Founder member Countries***
Yoweri Kaguta Museveni	Uganda
Benjamin Mkapa	Tanzania
Daniel Arap Moi	Kenya

How did Benjamin Mkapa contribute to the revival of EAC?

✓ He greatly encouraged the revival of the EAC.

Why EAC was revived in 2001?

✓ To promote regional trade.
✓ To widen market for goods.
✓ To create a common currency.
✓ To promote better transport network.
✓ To remove trade barriers.
✓ To promote unity, peace and friendship.

Give any four factors that delayed the revival of the EAC.
- ✓ Difference in education system.
- ✓ Difference in political ideologies.
- ✓ Restrictions on importation of some trade items.
- ✓ Suspicion among the three presidents for supporting rebels against each other.

Note: *Rwanda and Burundi also joined the EAC in July 2009 and South Sudan in 2016.*

How many member countries make up the current EAC?
- ✓ Six countries

Name the countries that make up the current EAC.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ South Sudan

State any four reasons why Rwanda, Burundi and South Sudan joined the EAC.
- ✓ To promote regional trade.
- ✓ To widen on the market for goods.
- ✓ To remove trade barriers
- ✓ To promote better transport network
- ✓ To promote unity, peace and friendship
- ✓ To get what they cannot produce.

Name any four service providers of EAC.
- ✓ East African examination council
- ✓ East African railway and harbours
- ✓ East African airways
- ✓ East African telecommunication
- ✓ East African customs and excise
- ✓ East African literature bureau
- ✓ East African civil authority
- ✓ East African Development Bank (EADB)

Mention any four services provided by EAC.
- ✓ Transport service.
- ✓ Communication service.
- ✓ Banking service.
- ✓ Education service.

Write down organs of the EAC.
- ✓ The Summit
- ✓ The Council of Ministers
- ✓ The Secretariat
- ✓ The East African Legislative Assembly (EALA)
- ✓ The East African Court of Justice (EACJ)
- ✓ The Coordinating committee
- ✓ The Secretariat Committee

The Summit
- ✓ It is the supreme organ of EAC.
- ✓ It is made up of Heads of States of member countries.

What is the major role of the Summit of EAC?
- ✓ To direct the general activities of EAC.

Who is the current chairperson of EAC?
- ✓ Paul Kagame

The Council of Ministers
- ✓ It consists of ministers of cooperation from the six member States.

What is the major role of the Council of Ministers of EAC?
- ✓ It makes decision on behalf of the summit

The Secretariat

What title is given to the head of the secretariat of EAC?

- ✓ Secretary General.

Who is the current Secretary General of the EAC?

- ✓ Liberat Mfumukeko of Rwanda

Where are the headquarters of the secretariat of the EAC found?

- ✓ Arusha in Tanzania.

What is the main role of the Secretariat of EAC?

- ✓ It runs the day to day activities of the community

EALA

Write EALA in full.

- ✓ East African Legislative Assembly.

Name the parliament of EAC.

- ✓ East African Legislative Assembly. (**EALA)**

Where are the headquarters of EALA found?

- ✓ Arusha in Tanzania.

Who was the first speaker EALA?

- ✓ Mike Sebale

Who is the current speaker of the EALA?

- ✓ Martin Ngoga

State any three roles of the EALA.

- ✓ It makes laws governing EAC.
- ✓ It debates and approves the budget of EAC.
- ✓ It discusses all matters related to EAC.

The East African Court of Justice (EACJ)

- ✓ It consists of judges appointed from member States.

What title is given to the head of EACJ?

- ✓ President of EACJ.

Who is the current president of EACJ?

- ✓ Justice Emmanuel Ugirashabuja

Where are the headquarters of EACJ found?

- ✓ Arusha in Tanzania.

Give any two roles of the East African Court of Justice.

- ✓ It ensures that cooperation is observed by member states
- ✓ It defends the activities of the member states in relation to the cooperation's policies

The coordinating committee

- ✓ It consists of permanent secretaries from member States.

Give any one role of the coordinating committee of EAC.

- ✓ It coordinates the activities of the secretariat committee.

The Secretariat Committee

- ✓ It monitors the implementations of the policies of the cooperation.

Give any four symbols of EAC

- ✓ EAC Flag.
- ✓ EAC Anthem.
- ✓ EAC parliament.
- ✓ EAC Coat of Arms.
- ✓ EAC motto
- ✓ EAC Emblem

How many stanzas does the EAC Anthem have?
- ✓ Three stanzas

How many colours does the EAC Flag have?
- ✓ Six colours

Write down the colours on EAC Flag from the top to bottom
1. Blue
2. White
3. Black
4. Green,
5. Yellow
6. Red

Name the feature found in the middle of the EAC Flag
- ✓ EAC Coat of Arms.

Name the feature found in the middle of the EAC Coat of Arms
- ✓ The map of East Africa.

Name the feature found on the top of the EAC Coat of Arms.
- ✓ The abbreviation EAC

Write down the words found at the bottom of the EAC Coat of Arms.
- ✓ "Jumuiya ya Afrika Mashariki"

Write down the EAC motto
- ✓ One people, one destiny.

Name any four features found on the EAC Emblem.
- ✓ Lake Victoria
- ✓ Abbreviation of EAC.
- ✓ Pictogram of a handshake.
- ✓ Branches of leaves

How is EAC important to people in East Africa?
- ✓ It reduces taxes on goods
- ✓ It reduces tariffs on goods
- ✓ It creates jobs to people
- ✓ It promotes regional trade
- ✓ It widens on the market for goods
- ✓ It promotes tourism in East Africa
- ✓ It promotes transport and communication in East Africa
- ✓ It promotes freedom of movement of people in the EAC countries
- ✓ It strengthens cooperation, friendship, peace and unity in East Africa.
- ✓ EAC makes it easy to access education in any of East African country.

Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA)
- ✓ COMESA was formed on 8th December, 1994.
- ✓ COMESA was formed to replace "**Preferential Trade Area**" (PTA) which was formed in **198.**
- ✓ COMESA has its headquarters in **Lusaka in Zambia.**
- ✓ COMESA is the largest regional body in Africa.

Name any four areas of cooperation of COMESA member States.
- ✓ Customs
- ✓ Industry
- ✓ Communication
- ✓ Agriculture
- ✓ Trade
- ✓ Transport

Name the member countries of COMESA

- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ DRC
- ✓ Lesotho
- ✓ Comoros
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Seychelles
- ✓ Mauritius
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ Malawi
- ✓ Zambia
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Namibia
- ✓ Angola
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Ethiopia
- ✓ Djibouti
- ✓ Eswatini
- ✓ Eritrea

Name four island countries that are members of COMESA.

- ✓ Comoros
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Seychelles
- ✓ Mauritius

Why is Tanzania not a member of COMESA?

- ✓ Tanzania feared zero tariff reduction of COMESA that would harm her industrial growth.

Note: *Reasons for the formation of regional bodies are the very ones for the formation of COMESA.*

A MAP OF AFRICA SHOWING MEMBER COUNTRIES OF COMESA.



Economic Community for West African States.

Write ECOWAS in full.

- ✓ Economic Community for West African States

When was ECOWAS formed?

- ✓ 28th May, 1975.

Name the regional body which unites all countries in West Africa.

- ✓ ECOWAS

Where are the headquarters of ECOWAS found?>

- ✓ Lagos in Nigeria

What do we call the military wing of ECOWAS?

- ✓ ECOMOG

Write ECOMOG in full.

- ✓ Economic Community of West African States Mongering Group.

Give any three roles of ECOMOG?

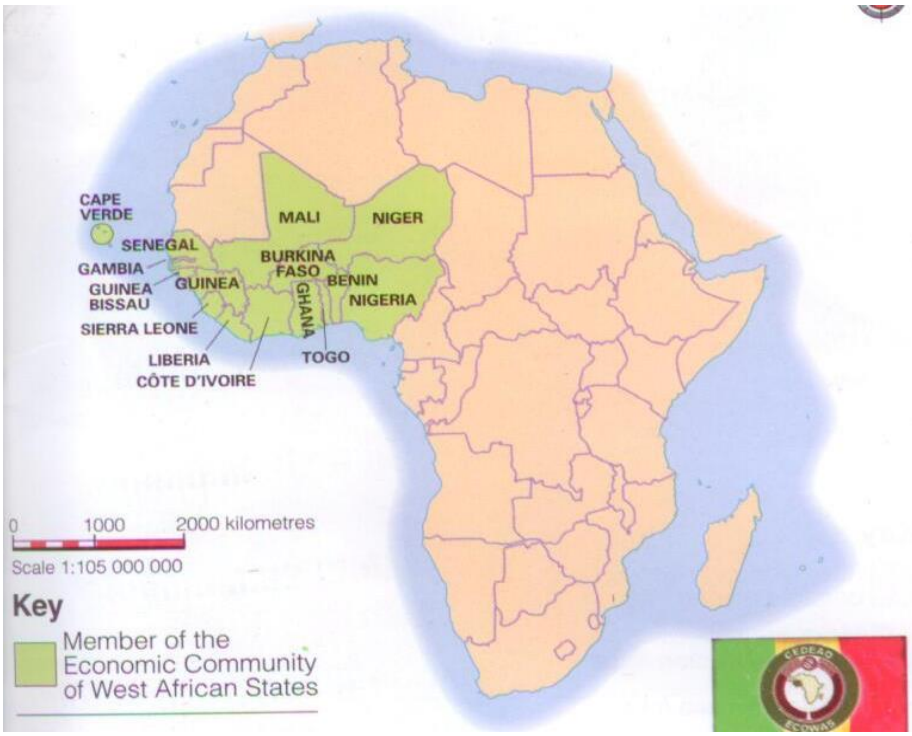
- ✓ To prevent civil wars in member countries.
- ✓ To maintain peace and security in member countries.
- ✓ To solve border conflicts in member States.

Write down member countries of ECOWAS.

- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Mali
- ✓ Benin
- ✓ Togo
- ✓ Ivory Coast
- ✓ Burkina Faso
- ✓ Niger
- ✓ Guinea
- ✓ Guinea Bissau
- ✓ Sierra Leone
- ✓ Liberia
- ✓ Gambia
- ✓ Cape Verde
- ✓ Senegal

Note: *Reasons for the formation of regional bodies are the very ones for the formation of ECOWAS..*

A MAP OF AFRICA SHOWING MEMBER COUNTRIES OF ECOWAS.



Southern African Development Community (SADC)

- ✓ SADC was originally called "Southern African Development Coordination Conference" **(SADCC).**

Name the regional body that unites all countries in southern Africa.

- ✓ SADC

Where are the headquarters of SADC found?

- ✓ Gaborone in Botswana

Write down member countries of SADC.

- ✓ Zambia
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Swaziland
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Angola
- ✓ Mauritius
- ✓ Lesotho
- ✓ Malawi
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Botswana
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ DRC
- ✓ Seychelles
- ✓ Namibia
- ✓ South Africa

Note: *Reasons for the formation of regional bodies are the very ones for the formation of SADC.*

A MAP OF AFRICA SHOWING MEMBER COUNTRIES OF SADC.



Inter - Governmental Authority on Development (IGAD)

Name the regional body that unites countries in Horn of Africa.
- ✓ IGAD

Where are headquarters of IGAD found?
- ✓ Djibouti.

Name the member countries of IGAD.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ South Sudan
- ✓ Ethiopia
- ✓ Djibouti
- ✓ Eritrea
- ✓ Somalia

Give any three objectives of IGAD. (Why was IGAD formed?)
- ✓ To unite member countries
- ✓ To solve the problem of famine in member countries
- ✓ To solve the problem of limited water in member countries

Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC)

Name the organization that unites all major oil countries in Africa.
- ✓ OPEC

Give any four objective of OPEC (Why was OPEC formed?)
- ✓ To widen market for oil
- ✓ To unite all oil producing countries
- ✓ To regulate oil supply and production
- ✓ To advocate for rights of oil producing countries
- ✓ To promote cooperation among oil producing countries.
- ✓ To determine the prices of oil products in the world
- ✓ To provide technical and economic aid to member countries.

How do countries benefit from being members of OPEC?

- ✓ It unites all oil producing countries
- ✓ It provide technical and economic aid to member countries
- ✓ It determines the prices of oil products in the world.
- ✓ It advocates for rights of oil producing countries
- ✓ It widens the market for oil

Name the member countries of OPEC.

In Africa	*Outside Africa*
Nigeria	Iran
Algeria	Iraq
Libya	Saudi Arabia
Egypt	Kuwait
Angola	Ecuador
Equatorial Guinea	United Arab Emirates
Gabon	Venezuela
DRC	Qatar

Where are the headquarters of OPEC found?

- ✓ Vienna in Australia

ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT IN AFRICA

Give the meaning of the following terms.

a) **An economy** is the relationship between production, trade and supply of money in an area.
b) **Development** is the gradual change from a poor to a better state.
c) **Economic development** is the process by which a country improves the standards of living and economic wealth of an area.
d) **Resources** are features of the environment used to meet human needs.
e) **Economic resources** are the resources used by people to earn a living.
f) **A single cash crop economy** is a type of economy that depends mainly on cash crops.

Give one reason why a single cash crop economy earns little revenue and less developed.

- ✓ A single cash crop economy depends on the climate.

Write down major economic resources of Africa.

- ✓ Land
- ✓ Minerals
- ✓ Wildlife
- ✓ Human labour
- ✓ Water bodies
- ✓ Climate
- ✓ Vegetation
- ✓ Electricity

Note: *Africa's resources are grouped into"*

- ✓ *Renewable resources*
- ✓ *Non – renewable resources.*

How do the following resources contribute to the economic development of Africa?

a) Land

- ✓ It is where agriculture is carried out.
- ✓ It is a source of minerals.
- ✓ It is where people build houses.
- ✓ It is where water bodies and vegetation are found.
- ✓ It where industrialization is carried out.

State any four ways of caring for land.

- ✓ By controlling soil erosion
- ✓ By practicing crop rotation
- ✓ By practicing bush fallowing.
- ✓ By applying manure to maintain soil fertility.
- ✓ By avoiding bush burning
- ✓ By avoiding overgrazing
- ✓ By avoiding overcultivating land
- ✓ Avoid dumping industrial wastes on land.

b) Minerals
- ✓ They are raw material in industries
- ✓ They are sold for income
- ✓ Mining is a source of jobs

Give any two ways of caring for minerals.
- ✓ By recycling used materials.
- ✓ By controlling extraction of minerals.

c) Water bodies
- ✓ They are fishing grounds.
- ✓ They provide water for irrigation.
- ✓ They provide water for industrial use.
- ✓ They aid water transport.
- ✓ They help in rain formation.
- ✓ They attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ Rivers help to generate HEP

Give any three ways of caring for water bodies.
- ✓ Avoid dumping industrial wastes in water bodies.
- ✓ Avoid overfishing.
- ✓ Avoid swamp drainage.

d) Wildlife
- ✓ Wildlife attracts tourists who bring income.

e) Vegetation
- ✓ Vegetation helps in rain formation.
- ✓ Vegetation provides timber which sold for income.
- ✓ Vegetation attracts tourists who bring income.

f) Human labour
- ✓ Operates machines
- ✓ Manages the funds
- ✓ Trains new workers
- ✓ Provides security

Give three types of human labour.
- ✓ Skilled labour
- ✓ Semi-skilled labour
- ✓ Unskilled labour

Why is labour needed in all areas of production?
- ✓ To organize all other factors of production.

Write down problems faced in the utilization of resources in Africa.
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour
- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Low levels of technology
- ✓ Insecurity and political instability
- ✓ Poor quality resources
- ✓ High costs of resources.
- ✓ Some resources are scattered
- ✓ Poor transport and communication
- ✓ Unfavourable government policies
- ✓ Lack of awareness about resources.

Give any four factors that have contributed to the development of Africa
- ✓ Rapid industrialization
- ✓ Presence of raw materials
- ✓ Increased levels of literacy
- ✓ Presence of skilled and non-skilled labour
- ✓ Presence of peace and security
- ✓ Presences of many economic resources
- ✓ Formation of regional bodies
- ✓ Improved transport and communication

State any four indicators of development in Africa
- ✓ Many industries
- ✓ Good social services
- ✓ Political stability
- ✓ High life expectation
- ✓ Controlled inflation
- ✓ Urbanization
- ✓ Increased income per person

State any four characteristics of under developed countries.

- ✓ High rate of illiteracy
- ✓ Low levels of technology
- ✓ High rate of unemployment
- ✓ Low life expectancy
- ✓ Poor transport and communication
- ✓ Constant civil wars
- ✓ Use of manual labour
- ✓ Dependence of foreign aid
- ✓ Mostly produce raw materials

Mention any four characteristics of developed countries.

- ✓ Presence of employment
- ✓ Use of modern technology
- ✓ High life expectancy
- ✓ Presence of many industries
- ✓ High levels of literacy
- ✓ Mostly produce fished goods
- ✓ Good transport and communication

Mention the factors affect the economic development in Africa

- ✓ Disunity
- ✓ Dictatorship
- ✓ Coups
- ✓ Civil wars
- ✓ Unemployment
- ✓ Corruption
- ✓ Poor technology
- ✓ Economic collapse
- ✓ Low life expectancy
- ✓ Refugee problem
- ✓ Ignorance
- ✓ Poverty
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Diseases
- ✓ Poor transport and communication

INDUSTRIAL EXPANSION IN AFRICA

- ✓ Industrial expansion is the rate of growth on which new industries are set up in a given area.

Mention any four factors that are considered before setting up an industry in an area.

- ✓ Capital
- ✓ Land
- ✓ Labour
- ✓ Electricity
- ✓ Market
- ✓ Transport
- ✓ Security
- ✓ Management
- ✓ Source of water

Why are the following factors considered before setting up an industry in an area?

Factor	***Use***
Capital	✓ It is used to pay workers. ✓ It is used to buy machines. ✓ It is used to by raw materials.
Land	✓ It is used for industrial expansion ✓ It is where an industry is constructed
Labour	✓ It provides manpower to an industry. ✓ It provides security to an industry. ✓ It is used to manage funds of an industry. ✓ It is used to mix chemicals in an industry ✓ It is used to run machines
Electricity	✓ It is used to run machines in an industry. ✓ It provides light in an industry.
Market	✓ It is where finished industrial products are sold.
Security	✓ It provides safety to an industry.
Transport	✓ It is used for movement raw materials to an industry. ✓ It is used for movement of finished products to markets

Write down the factors that contribute to industrial growth/expansion in Africa

- ✓ Presence of capital
- ✓ Presence of raw materials
- ✓ Presence of cheap labour force.
- ✓ Presence of cheap hydroelectric power
- ✓ Presence of reliable water sources
- ✓ Good government policies
- ✓ Presence of enough land for expansion
- ✓ Good transport and communication.
- ✓ Large market for goods
- ✓ High levels of technology
- ✓ Political stability

How does industrialization contribute to economic development of some African countries?
- ✓ It creates employment to people.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It leads to development roads.
- ✓ It diversifies the economy
- ✓ It promotes urbanization in areas where industries are setup.
- ✓ Creates market for local raw materials.
- ✓ Goods become cheaper since they are manufactured within.

Give any four dangers of industrialization.
- ✓ Pollutes the environment
- ✓ Destruction of vegetation
- ✓ Displacement of people
- ✓ Noise pollution
- ✓ Encourages rural urban migration

Mention any four problems faced by industrial sector in Africa
Why is industrial growth slowing in some African countries?
- ✓ Shortage of funds to invest in industrial sector.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of goods
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour force.
- ✓ Shortage of market for goods
- ✓ Shortage of raw materials
- ✓ Low level of technology
- ✓ Poor transport and communication.
- ✓ Political instability
- ✓ Competition from other developed countries.

The Republic of South Africa
- ✓ South Africa was colonized by Britain.
- ✓ South Africa is crossed by Tropic of Capricorn.
- ✓ South Africa is found in the Southern hemisphere.
- ✓ South Africa has two capital cities

Name two capital cites of South Africa.
- ✓ Pretoria ***(Administrative capital city)***
- ✓ Cape Town ***(Commercial capital city)***

Name the provinces in South Africa
- ✓ Orange Free State
- ✓ Transvaal province
- ✓ Natal province
- ✓ Limpopo province
- ✓ Cape Province

Name four major seaports of South Africa.
- ✓ Port Elizabeth
- ✓ Port Durban
- ✓ Port East London
- ✓ Cape Town

Name the most industrialized and developed country in Africa.
- ✓ South Africa

Why South Africa is has a strong and stable economy?
- ✓ South Africa is highly industrialized.

Name the most industrialized centres in South Africa

- ✓ Durban
- ✓ Port Elizabeth
- ✓ Johannesburg
- ✓ Cape Town
- ✓ East London
- ✓ Witwatersrand

Give any four types of industries in South Africa

- ✓ Textile industry
- ✓ Chemical industry
- ✓ Cement industry
- ✓ Food processing industry
- ✓ Gold refineries
- ✓ Oil refineries
- ✓ Paint making industry
- ✓ Soap making industry
- ✓ Motor vehicle assembly
- ✓ Heavy engineering industry

A map showing major industrial regions of South Africa (Ref: Mk standard SST pupil's bk 7)

Name any two most industrialized centres in Egypt.

- ✓ Alexandria
- ✓ Cairo

Name any four industrial centres in Ghana

- ✓ Accra
- ✓ Tema
- ✓ Takoradi
- ✓ Tamale

INDUSTRIALIZATION IN NIGERIA

Mention any four industrial centres in Nigeria

- ✓ Lagos (*most industrialized*)
- ✓ Kaduna
- ✓ Kano
- ✓ Port Harcourt

Name the major industries in the following towns in Nigeria.

Port Harcourt	***Kaduna***	***Kano***	***Lagos***
✓ Oil refinery industry	✓ Textile industry	✓ Car assembly	✓ Soap making industries
✓ Textile industry	✓ Car assembly	✓ Soft drink industries	✓ Chemical industries
✓ Glass industry	✓ Soft drink industries	✓ Leather product industry	✓ Car assembly
✓ Paint industry	✓ Bicycle assembly	✓ Agriculture product industries	
✓ Cigarette industry	✓ Fertilizer industry		

MINING IN AFRICA

Give the meaning of the following terms.

- ✓ ***Mining*** *is the process of extracting of minerals from underground.*
- ✓ ***Mining*** *is the process of removing of minerals from the earth's crust.*
- ✓ ***A mine*** *is a place where minerals are extracted.*
- ✓ ***A miner*** *is a person who extracts minerals from underground.*
- ✓ ***A mineral*** *is a chemical substance found beneath the earth.*

How are minerals detected in an area?

- ✓ By use of geothermal air born exploration

What do we call specialists who discover minerals in an area?

- ✓ Geologists

Give three types of minerals.

- ✓ Metallic minerals
- ✓ Nonmetallic minerals
- ✓ Fuel minerals

Give any four examples of metallic minerals.

- ✓ Manganese
- ✓ Bauxite
- ✓ Copper
- ✓ Cobalt
- ✓ Gold
- ✓ Silver
- ✓ Tin
- ✓ Zinc
- ✓ Lead
- ✓ Iron ore
- ✓ Wolfram
- ✓ Diamonds
- ✓ Chromite

Mention any four examples of nonmetallic minerals.

- ✓ Phosphates
- ✓ Limestone
- ✓ Salt
- ✓ Rocks
- ✓ Clay
- ✓ Soda ash
- ✓ Silk
- ✓ Sand
- ✓ Kaolin

Give any four examples of fuel minerals.

- ✓ Coal
- ✓ Natural gas
- ✓ Oil
- ✓ Ignite

Give any four products of crude oil

- ✓ Petroleum
- ✓ Diesel
- ✓ Paraffin
- ✓ Fertilizer

Which types of transport is used to is transport Crude oil

- ✓ Pipeline transport

Why Crude oil is transported by Pipeline transport?

- ✓ Crude oil is in liquid form.

Give any four methods/type of mining used in Africa

- ✓ Open cast mining method
- ✓ Underground mining method
- ✓ Drill mining method
- ✓ Alluvial mining method
- ✓ Quarrying mining method (mining stones)
- ✓ Sub-marine mining

Open cast mining

- ✓ This method is also known as the pit method**/ surface mining**.
- ✓ It is used for mining minerals which are near the surface.

Mention any four minerals mined using open cast method.

- ✓ Sand
- ✓ Clay
- ✓ Diamonds
- ✓ Iron ore
- ✓ Coal

Underground mining method

- ✓ This method of mining is also called **tunnel mining method/ shaft mining**.
- ✓ It is used to mine minerals which are very deep in the earth's crust.

Name the mineral which is mined using underground mining method.

- ✓ Copper

State any four problems associated with underground mining method.

- ✓ Flooding of mines
- ✓ Falling of rocks
- ✓ Suffocation due to much heat and loss of fresh air
- ✓ It is expensive and difficult

Drill mining
- ✓ It is used for mining oil/petroleum.
- ✓ It is also used to mine water by boreholes.

Drift mining
- ✓ It is used for mining **coal.**

Alluvial mining
- ✓ It is used for mining minerals which are mixed with other deposits of clay and sand.
- ✓ It is used for mining gold.

Sub-marine mining
- ✓ It is used to extract minerals found in the rocks and at the bottom of seas.
- ✓ **Note:** Sub-marines are used to transport both miners and machines to and from the bottom of the seas.

State the factors that have led to growth of mining sector in some African countries.
- ✓ Presence of capital
- ✓ Presence of minerals
- ✓ Presence of cheap labour force.
- ✓ Good transport and communication.
- ✓ Large market for minerals
- ✓ High levels of technology
- ✓ Political stability
- ✓ Good government policies

How does mining contribute to economic development of some African countries?
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It leads to development roads.
- ✓ It diversifies the economy
- ✓ It promotes industrialization
- ✓ It promotes urbanization in mining areas
- ✓ It earns foreign exchange after selling minerals.

Write down any four dangers associated with mining.
- ✓ Pollution of atmosphere
- ✓ Noise pollution
- ✓ Destruction of vegetation
- ✓ Displacement of people and animals
- ✓ Unemployment due to immigrates
- ✓ Death of miners from oil mines
- ✓ Contamination of water sources
- ✓ Encourages rural urban migration

Mention any four problems faced by mining sector in Africa
Give any four factors that have delayed the extraction some minerals in Africa.
- ✓ Shortage of funds to invest in mining sector.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of minerals.
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour force.
- ✓ Competition from other developed countries.
- ✓ Shortage of market for some minerals
- ✓ Low level of technology
- ✓ Poor transport and communication.
- ✓ Political instability
- ✓ Some minerals are scattered
- ✓ Unfavorable government policies
- ✓ Opposition from environmentalists
- ✓ Mineral exhaustion
- ✓ Death of miners

Note: *All the above factors are reasons responsible for the delay of mineral exploitation in Africa.*

Write down any four possible solutions to the problems faced by mining industry in Africa.
- ✓ Strengthening security in areas with mineral deposits.
- ✓ Widening market for minerals.
- ✓ Promoting transport and communication.
- ✓ Offering loans to mining industry.
- ✓ Subsidizing taxes charged on mining industry
- ✓ Improving technology used in mining industry
- ✓ Setting up favourable polices to mining industry
- ✓ Maintaining friendship with other countries
- ✓ Making mining industry more profitable and less risky to workers

Oil refining in Africa
- ✓ ***Oil refining*** *is the transformation of crude oil into pure finished oil.*
- ✓ ***A refinery*** *is a place where oil is purified.*
- ✓ ***Crude oil*** *is unrefined oil.*
- ✓ ***Functional distribution*** *is the process by which crude oil is heated in order to get different oil products.*
- ✓ ***Onshore oil wells are*** *oilfields found on the main land.*
- ✓ ***Off shore oil wells*** *are oilfields found near or in water bodies.*

Name the major minerals mined in following countries

Country	***Major mineral mined***
Uganda	Limestone
Kenya	Soda ash
Tanzania	Diamond
Nigeria	Oil
Libya	Oil
South Africa	Gold
Zambia	Copper
DRC	Copper and diamond

Oil mining in Nigeria

Name the leading oil producing country in Africa.
- ✓ Nigeria

Name the place where most oil deposits are found in Nigeria.
- ✓ Niger delta

Which type of transport is used for transporting oil from oil field to refineries?
- ✓ Pipeline transport

Name the European countries where Nigeria exports her oil.
- ✓ United States of America
- ✓ France
- ✓ Germany
- ✓ Japan
- ✓ Italy
- ✓ Britain

Note*: Shell is the leading oil company in Africa. Nigeria is followed by* ***Libya*** *and* ***Algeria in*** *oil production.*

Name any four areas in Nigeria where oil is mined.
- ✓ Kaduna
- ✓ Warri
- ✓ Port Harcourt
- ✓ Onitsha
- ✓ Aba

Give any four uses of crude oil.
- ✓ For generate thermal electricity.
- ✓ For making lubricants
- ✓ For making tar
- ✓ For making Petrol
- ✓ For making diesel
- ✓ For making paraffin
- ✓ It is sold for money

State any four similarities between Nigeria and Uganda.
- ✓ Both have colonial ties with Britain.
- ✓ Both use English as official language.
- ✓ Both are member countries of AU.
- ✓ Both participate in commonwealth games.
- ✓ Both are independent countries.
- ✓ Both lie within the tropics.
- ✓ Both attend CHOGM

Give any four differences between Nigeria and Uganda.
- ✓ Nigeria is bigger than Uganda in terms of size.
- ✓ Nigeria is bigger than Uganda in terms of population.
- ✓ Nigeria is found in West Africa while Uganda is found in East Africa.
- ✓ Nigeria is a member of ECOWAS while Uganda is member of EAC.
- ✓ Nigeria is non land locked country unlike Uganda.
- ✓ The economy of Nigeria majorly depends oil mining while that of Uganda majorly depends on agriculture

Libya
- ✓ Libya is a desert country found in the north of Africa.
- ✓ The capital city of Libya is Tripoli

Name the countries that neighbour Libya in the following directions.
a) East – Egypt
b) Southeast – Sudan
c) South – Chad
d) southwest –Niger
e) Northwest – Tunisia

Name the water body that neighbours Libya in the North.
- ✓ Mediterranean Sea

Name the commonest type of transport used in Libya.
Air transport

Note: *Animal transport is also used in Libya i.e. camels*

Why the Northern part of Libya is densely populated?
- ✓ The capital city of Libya is found in the North
- ✓ Presence of oilfields in the North of Libya.
- ✓ There are fertile soils for crop growing in the North of Libya.
- ✓ There are better social services in the north of Libya.
- ✓ There is better climate in the north of Libya.
- ✓ There are more job opportunities in the north of Libya.

Oil mining in Libya
- ✓ **Petroleum** is the major and back bone export of Libya.
- ✓ Oil in Libya is transported by **pipeline transport**
- ✓ Most of oilfields in Libya are found northern part of Benghazi.

Name any four oilfields in Libya.
- ✓ Zelten
- ✓ Raguba
- ✓ Atshan
- ✓ Dahara

Mention any four oil refineries in Libya.
- ✓ Tobruk
- ✓ Sidra
- ✓ Mersa-el-brega
- ✓ Ras-la-nuf
- ✓ Zuora etc

Why is Libya's oil on a high demand worldwide?
- ✓ Libya's oil has less Sulphur.
- ✓ Libya is near to Europe which reduces transport costs

Give any two similarities between Libya and Uganda.
- ✓ Both are independent countries.
- ✓ Both are members of Africa Union.

State any four difference between Libya and Uganda
- ✓ Uganda is a land locked country unlike Libya.
- ✓ Libya is crossed by Tropic of cancer while Uganda is crossed by Equator
- ✓ Libya is bigger than Uganda in terms of size
- ✓ Libya has a lower population than Uganda.
- ✓ Libya was colonized by Italy while Uganda was colonized by Britain
- ✓ Libya is found in North Africa while Uganda is found in East Africa
- ✓ The economy of Libya majorly depends oil mining while that of Uganda majorly depends on agriculture.

A map showing oilfields in Libya (ref: comprehensive SST pupil's book 7 page 158)

Oil mining in Uganda
Name the place where crude oil was dissolved in Uganda.
- ✓ Shores of Lake Albert

Name any four oilfields found on the shores of Lake Albert.
- ✓ Kigogole
- ✓ Ngege
- ✓ Ngara
- ✓ Karuka
- ✓ Waraga
- ✓ Mputa
- ✓ Kingfisher
- ✓ Ngasa

Why Uganda is constructing pipeline from Uganda to Tanzania
- ✓ To transport crude oil from Uganda to Tanzania for purification

Apart from crude oil, name one other mineral that was discovered on shores of Lake Albert.
- ✓ Natural gas

Name any four natural gas fields found on the shores of Lake Albert.
- ✓ Kasamene
- ✓ Nzizi
- ✓ Turaco
- ✓ Taitai

Other minerals mined in Uganda include;-

Mineral	*Place of location*
✓ Gold	✓ Karamoja ✓ Namayingo
✓ Copper	✓ Kilembe
✓ Phosphates	✓ Tororo
✓ Tin	✓ Kabale
✓ Salt	✓ Lake Katwe ✓ Lake Kasenyi
✓ Limestone	✓ Kasese (Hima) ✓ Tororo (Osukuru hills)
✓ Wolfram	✓ Kabale
✓ Graphite	✓ Acoli

Give the uses of the following minerals.

a) Gold

- ✓ For making watches
- ✓ For making ear rings
- ✓ For making necklaces
- ✓ For making ornaments
- ✓ For making coins
- ✓ For making jewels
- ✓ It is the most valuable mineral
- ✓ It earns foreign exchange after sale.

b) Copper

- ✓ For making electric wires
- ✓ For making motors
- ✓ For making refrigerators
- ✓ For making coins
- ✓ For making bullets
- ✓ For making pipes
- ✓ For making cooker

c) Phosphates

- ✓ For making artificial fertilizers

d) Tin

- ✓ For steel plating

e) Salt

- ✓ For human consumption
- ✓ For industrial raw material

f) Limestone

- ✓ For making cement

g) Wolfram

- ✓ For making rock drills
- ✓ For making gun barrels
- ✓ For making rocket engines

h) Graphite

- ✓ For making pencils.

How will Uganda benefit from the extraction of crude oil from shores of Lake Albert?

- ✓ Ugandans will jobs.
- ✓ It will attract tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It will diversify the economy of Uganda
- ✓ It will promote development of roads in Uganda
- ✓ It will help Uganda to promote international cooperation
- ✓ It will earn foreign exchange to Uganda after selling oil and oil products.

Give any four negative effects of extraction of crude oil on the shores of Lake Albert.

- ✓ Pollution of atmosphere
- ✓ Destruction of natural vegetation
- ✓ Noise pollution
- ✓ Rural urban migration
- ✓ Displacement of people and animals
- ✓ Pollution of water sources

MINING IN SOUTH AFRICA

✓ **Mining is** the major occupation of South Africa.

Name the leading producer of Gold in the world.

✓ South Africa

Name the first geologist to discover cold in South Africa.

✓ George Harrison.

***Note**: Gold is most valuable mineral in the world.*

What is Gold rush?

✓ Gold rush is the movement of people in search for Gold.

Name the chief Gold mining place in South Africa.

✓ Witwatersrand or rand

What was the major cause of Witwatersrand Gold crush?

✓ The discovery of Gold

Apart from Witwatersrand, name other two places where gold is mined in South Africa.

✓ Golden Arch - Johannesburg

Apart from Gold, name other minerals that are mined in South Africa.

Mineral	***Place of location***
Diamonds	Kimberley
Copper	Transvaal
Coal	Natal Witting Newcastle
Iron ore	Thabazimbi

Mineral	***Place of location***
Iron ore	Thabazimbi
Uranium	Johannesburg
Platinum	Rustenburg
Asbestos	Ladenburg Barberton

Other minerals in South Africa include; Lead Zinc, Tin, Sliver, Salt, and Manganese

Give the uses of the following minerals.

Diamonds	**Coal**	**Iron ore**	**Asbestos**
Used as game stone For masking glasses For cutting metals For making jewels	It is used as fuel For making coke For making dye	For making Nails For making iron bars For making iron sheets	For making fire proofs For making iron sheets For making insulators

Platinum	**Uranium**
For making jewels For purification exhausted gas	For making new nuclear weapons For making atomic energy

Minerals in the following countries of East Africa

Mineral	**Country**	**Place of location**
Gold	Tanzania	Mara, Mwanza
	Rwanda	Rusizi
	Burundi	Muyinga Province
	Kenya	Kilimapesa
Limestone	Kenya	Mutomo, Ikutha
	Rwanda	Rusizi
	Tanzania	Tanga, Mtwara
Soda ash	Kenya	Lake Magadi
	Tanzania	Lake Natron
Phosphates	Tanzania	Minjingu
Diamonds	Tanzania	Mwadui (Shinyanga)
Salt	Tanzania	Mandawa
Wolfram	Tanzania	Mwanza

A map of South Africa showing major mining centres (ref: Mk standard SST pupil's book 7 page 163)

Mining in Zambia

Name the major mineral that is mined in Zambia.

- ✓ Copper

What do we call the place where copper is mined in Zambia?

- ✓ Copper belt.

***Note**: Copper belt is called Katanga region in DRC.*
***Smelter** is the place where copper is refined in Zambia.*

Apart from copper, name other minerals mined in Zambia.

- ✓ Coal
- ✓ Lead
- ✓ Cobalt
- ✓ Zinc
- ✓ Uranium
- ✓ Tin

Name the source of power used in copper belt in Zambia.

- ✓ Kariba dam (*Main source*)
- ✓ Kafu dam along river Zambezi.

Why is transport a great problem in Zambia?

- ✓ Zambia is a land locked country.

Name the sea route Zambia uses to take her copper market centres.

- ✓ Tazara railway

***Note:** Tazara railway handles most of the import and export of Zambia.*

Name the seaports used by Zambia for importation and exportation of her goods.

- ✓ Deira and Maputo in Mozambique
- ✓ Lobito in Angola
- ✓ Cape Town in South Africa

Mining in Democratic Republic of the Congo

Why DRC is not a land locked country?

- ✓ DRC has a small attachment to the Atlantic Ocean.

Name the seaport that handles the imports and exports of DRC.

- ✓ Port Matadi

Name two major minerals that are mined in DRC.

- ✓ Diamonds
- ✓ Copper.

Name the main mining centres of the following minerals in DRC.

- ✓ Copper - Katanga region /Shaba province.
- ✓ Diamond – Kasai

***Note:** DRC is the leading producer of **diamonds** in the world.*

State two methods that are used to mine copper in DRC

- ✓ Open casting method
- ✓ Shaft mining method

Why is open cast mining better than deep shift mining method.

- ✓ It is cheaper than shaft mining method
- ✓ It is safer than deep shaft mining method

Name two dams on River Congo that provide HEP to Katanga region.
- ✓ Inga dam
- ✓ Nziro dam

Which type of electricity is used in mining of minerals in Katanga region?
- ✓ Hydroelectricity

Apart from diamonds and copper, other minerals mined in DRC.
- ✓ Gold
- ✓ Cobalt
- ✓ Zinc
- ✓ Crude oil
- ✓ Coal
- ✓ Tin

Give any two reasons why road transport is not developed in DRC
- ✓ DRC has many thick forests.
- ✓ DRC receives plenty of rainfall which makes soil soggy.

Agricultural development in Africa
- ✓ ***Agriculture*** *is also called farming.*

What is farming?
- ✓ Farming is the growing of crops, keeping of poultry or rearing of animals.

Mention two types of farming carried out in Africa.
- ✓ Subsistence farming
- ✓ Plantation farming

What is subsistence farming?
- ✓ Subsistence farming is the growing of crops on a small scale mainly for domestic use.

State any four characteristics of subsistence farming
- ✓ It is carried out on small scale of land.
- ✓ It does not need large volume of capital
- ✓ Crops are mainly grow for domestic use
- ✓ There is use of elementary tools e.g. a hand hoe

Mention any four advantages of subsistence farming
- ✓ It is a source of food
- ✓ It is cheap to start and manage
- ✓ It does not need a lot of land
- ✓ It does not need skilled labour.
- ✓ It is common

Why is subsistence farming cheap start and manage?
- ✓ It does not need a lot of land
- ✓ It does not need skilled labour.
- ✓ It does not need large volume of capital
- ✓ There is use of elementary tools e.g. a hand hoe

State any two disadvantages of subsistence farming.
- ✓ Low crop yields
- ✓ Low income
- ✓ Overcrowding of the farm

What is plantation farming?
- ✓ Plantation farming is the growing of one perennial crop on a large scale of land for sale.
- ✓ *It is also called* ***extensive farming*** *or* ***commercial farming.***

Name any four countries where plantation farming is mainly carried out in African.

- ✓ South Africa
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Sudan
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Nigeria

Mention any four crops that are grown on plantations in Africa.

- ✓ Sugarcane
- ✓ Cotton
- ✓ Tea
- ✓ Oil palm
- ✓ Coffee
- ✓ Tobacco

State any four characteristics of plantation farming.

- ✓ It is carried out on a large scale of land
- ✓ One type of crop is mainly grown.
- ✓ Crops are mainly grown for sale.
- ✓ Modern methods of farming are used.

State any four advantages of plantation farming.

- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It leads to development of roads.
- ✓ It is a source of agricultural raw materials.
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling agriculture produce.

Give any three disadvantages of plantation farming

- ✓ It is expensive to start and manage
- ✓ It needs a large scale of land
- ✓ It encourage monoculture

State any four importance of farming

- ✓ It is a source of food
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It leads to development of roads.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It is a source of agricultural raw materials.
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling agricultural produce.

Give any four problems faced by farmers in Africa

- ✓ Price fluctuation of agricultural produce.
- ✓ Crop pests and diseases.
- ✓ Soil erosion.
- ✓ Soil exhaustion
- ✓ Prolonged drought.
- ✓ Competition for market.
- ✓ Poor crop yields.
- ✓ shortage of land
- ✓ Shortage of capital to invest in farming.
- ✓ Shortage of labour
- ✓ Poor transport and communication

Agriculture in South Africa

Mention any four crops that are grown in South Africa

Crop	***Area where it is mainly grown***
Sugarcane	Natal Province
Wheat	Orange Free States, Transvaal
Maize	Orange Free State, Kwazulu
Fruits	Eastern Cape, Western Cape
Sorghum	Orange Free State, Limpopo, Mpumulanga, Guateng

Name any three fruits that are grown in South Africa

- ✓ Apples
- ✓ Peas
- ✓ Pears

Mention any four crops grown in South Africa for commercial purpose.

- ✓ Sugarcane
- ✓ Cotton
- ✓ Tobacco
- ✓ Tea

Note: *South Africa is the leading producer of sugarcane in Africa.*

Give any four factors that have favoured the crowing of sugarcane in South Africa.

- ✓ Presence of enough land.
- ✓ Presence of enough capital
- ✓ Presence of cheap labour both skilled and unskilled.
- ✓ Presence of enough market for sugarcane.
- ✓ Good transport and communications.
- ✓ Good government policies.

Why are sugarcane plantations located in the coastal areas and Natal province?

- ✓ There are fertile soils
- ✓ There is reliable rainfall
- ✓ There is good climate

How has sugarcane growing contributed to the development of South Africa?

- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It leads to development of roads
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It earns income after selling sugarcane.
- ✓ Sugarcane is used as a raw material in sugar factories.

Give any four problems faced by sugarcane growing in South Africa

- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Shortage of land
- ✓ Shortage of labour
- ✓ Poor transport
- ✓ Price fluctuation of sugarcane.
- ✓ Competition from other sugarcane producing countries

Ghana

In which geographical region of Africa is Ghana found?

- ✓ West Africa

Name the countries that neighbour Ghana in the following directions.

a) North – Burkina Faso
b) West – Ivory coast
c) East – Togo

Name the water body which borders Ghana in the south.

- ✓ Atlantic Ocean

Why is Ghana not a land locked country?

- ✓ Ghana reaches the Atlantic Ocean in the South.

What is the major economic activity carried out in Ghana?

- ✓ Cocoa growing

Apart from cocoa growing, name other economic activities carried out in Ghana

- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Tourism
- ✓ Transport
- ✓ Trade

Give any four similarities between Uganda and Ghana
- ✓ Both were colonized by Britain
- ✓ Both are members of African Union
- ✓ Both are members of commonwealth
- ✓ Both participate in commonwealth games
- ✓ Both are independent countries
- ✓ Both use in English as official language

State any four differences between Ghana and Uganda.
- ✓ Ghana is bigger than Uganda in terms of size.
- ✓ Ghana has lesser population compared to Uganda
- ✓ Ghana is not a land locked country like Uganda.
- ✓ Ghana is found in West Africa while Uganda is found in East Africa.
- ✓ Ghana is crossed by Greenwich meridian while Uganda is crossed by Equator.
- ✓ Uganda got her independence in 1962 while Ghana in 1957

Cocoa growing in Africa

Name the first group of foreigners to grow cocoa in Africa.
- ✓ Portuguese

Name the place where cocoa was first grown in Africa.
- ✓ Sao Tome and Principe Island in Atlantic Ocean.

State any four factors that favour the growing of cocoa
- ✓ High temperatures
- ✓ Heavy rainfall
- ✓ High humidity
- ✓ Timely pruning
- ✓ Fertile soils

Mention any four countries which grow cocoa in Africa
- ✓ Ivory Coast
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Cameroon
- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Uganda

Mention any three areas where cocoa is grown in Uganda
- ✓ Bundibogyo
- ✓ Mukono
- ✓ Kabarole

Name the leading producer of cocoa in the world.
- ✓ Ghana

Which group of foreigners introduced cocoa growing in Ghana?
- ✓ British

What is the major export and foreign exchange earner in Ghana?
- ✓ Cocoa

Name the place where Cocoa was first grown in Ghana.
- ✓ Akwapim

Name the place where cocoa is grown on a large scale in Ghana.
- ✓ Kumasi

How did the British encourage cocoa growing in Ghana?
- ✓ By providing free cocoa seeds to the farmers.

Why did the British introduce cocoa growing in Ghana?
- ✓ To get raw materials for their industries
- ✓ They wanted Africans to get money to pay taxes after selling cocoa.

Apart from cocoa, name other crops that are grown in Ghana
- ✓ Maize
- ✓ Coffee
- ✓ Rice
- ✓ Cassava
- ✓ Cotton
- ✓ Yams
- ✓ Oil palm
- ✓ Millet
- ✓ Sorghum

State any four factors that favour the growing of cocoa in Ghana
- ✓ Presence of fertile soils
- ✓ Good government policy
- ✓ Timely pruning
- ✓ Large market for cocoa
- ✓ High humidity
- ✓ Heavy rainfall
- ✓ High temperatures
- ✓ Good transport and communication

How is cocoa grown?
- ✓ Cocoa is first grown in a nursery bed and then transferred in the main garden when it is about 5cm,.

***Note**: cocoa takes about 5-7 years to mature.*

Why cocoa trees are pruned?
- ✓ To enable large cocoa pods to grow.

How is cocoa harvesting?
- ✓ By cutting cocoa pods using a sharp knife

Why are cocoa seeds heaped together after scoped from cocoa pods?
- ✓ To ferment them.

Why is cocoa fermented?
- ✓ To gain flavour
- ✓ To prevent it from germinating

Name any three European countries which buy cocoa from Ghana
- ✓ Franca
- ✓ Germany
- ✓ Britain

Mention any two diseases that attack cocoa plant.
- ✓ Swollen shoot
- ✓ Black pot

Write down any four products of cocoa
- ✓ Cocoa powder
- ✓ Chocolate
- ✓ Body lotion
- ✓ Beverage
- ✓ Sweets

State any four uses of cocoa
- ✓ It is used for making beverages
- ✓ It is used for making sweets
- ✓ It is used for making butter
- ✓ It is used for making chocolates
- ✓ It is used for making body lotion such as cocoa butter

How does cocoa growing contribute to the economic development of Ghana?
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It promotes the development of roads
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling cocoa.
- ✓ Cocoa is used as a raw material in agro based industries.

State any four problems faced by cocoa growing in Ghana
- ✓ Climatic changes and hazards.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of cocoa.
- ✓ Cocoa pests and diseases
- ✓ Shortage of market for cocoa
- ✓ Shortage of land
- ✓ Poor transport in rural areas
- ✓ Poor technology of processing cocoa.
- ✓ Fire outbreaks in cocoa plantations.
- ✓ Completion from other cocoa growing countries

Nigeria
- ✓ Nigeria is one of the Niger delta States

What are the Niger delta states?
- ✓ Niger delta States are countries drained by River Niger.

In which region of Africa is Nigeria found
- ✓ West Africa

Name the European country which colonized Nigeria
- ✓ Britain

Give one factor that makes Nigeria not to be a land locked country
- ✓ Nigeria reaches the Atlantic Ocean in the South

Outline the economic activities carried in Nigeria
- ✓ Mining
- ✓ Farming
- ✓ Fishing
- ✓ Animal rearing

Name the major export and foreign earning of Nigeria
- ✓ Oil palm

State any four factors that favour the growing of oil palm in Nigeria
- ✓ Sandy acidic soils
- ✓ Ready market for oil palm
- ✓ Good government policy
- ✓ Good transport and communication
- ✓ High humidity
- ✓ Heavy rainfall
- ✓ High temperatures

How does oil palm growing contribute to the economic development of Nigeria?
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It promotes the development of roads
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling oil palm.
- ✓ Oil palm is used as a raw material in agro based industries.

State any four problems faced by oil palm growing in Nigeria.
- ✓ Climatic changes and hazards.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of oil palm.
- ✓ Oil palm pests and diseases
- ✓ Shortage of market for oil palm
- ✓ Shortage of land
- ✓ Poor transport in rural areas
- ✓ Poor technology of processing oil palm.
- ✓ Fire outbreaks in oil palm plantations.
- ✓ Completion from other oil palm growing countries

Give any four products of oil palm.
- ✓ Palm oil
- ✓ Palm wine
- ✓ Candle wax
- ✓ Margarine

How is oil palm oil important to people?
- ✓ It creates jobs to people
- ✓ It is sold for money
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income
- ✓ It is used for making soap
- ✓ It is used for making palm oil
- ✓ It is used for making candle wax
- ✓ It is used for making palm wine
- ✓ It is used for making margarine

Liberia

What is the major export and foreign earning of Liberia?
- ✓ Rubber

State any four factors that favour Rubber growing in Liberia
- ✓ Presence of capital
- ✓ Presence of ready market for rubber
- ✓ Presence of cheap labour both skilled and unskilled.
- ✓ Gently sloping land
- ✓ Heavy rainfall
- ✓ High temperature
- ✓ Fertile soil

How does rubber contribute to the economic development of Liberia?
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It promotes the development of roads
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling rubber.
- ✓ Rubber is used as a raw material in agro based industries.

State any four problems faced by rubber growing in Liberia.
- ✓ Climatic changes and hazards.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of rubber.
- ✓ Rubber pests and diseases
- ✓ Shortage of market for rubber
- ✓ Shortage of land
- ✓ Poor transport in rural areas
- ✓ Poor technology of processing rubber.
- ✓ Fire outbreaks in rubber plantations.
- ✓ Completion from other rubber growing countries

Write down uses of rubber
- ✓ It is used for making tyres
- ✓ It is used for making shoes
- ✓ It is used for making condoms
- ✓ It is used for making gloves
- ✓ It is used for making mattress
- ✓ It is used for making sandals

Pastoralism in Africa

What is pastoralism?

- ✓ Pastoralism is the movement of cattle keepers with their animals from one place to another looking for pasture and water.

Who is a pastoralist?

- ✓ A pastoralist is a person who carries out the activity of Pastoralism.

What is the major economic activity carried out in dry/arid areas of Africa?

- ✓ Cattle keeping

Pastoralism in Nigeria

Name the pastoral tribe in Nigeria

- ✓ Fulani

What is transhumance?

- ✓ Transhumance is the seasonal movement of the Fulani from one place to another looking for pasture and water for their animals.

Why do the Fulani carry out transhumance?

- ✓ To look for pasture for their animals
- ✓ To look for water for their animals

Name the pastoral tribes in the following countries in East Africa.

a) Kenya,

- ✓ Nandi
- ✓ Masai
- ✓ Turkana
- ✓ Galla
- ✓ Pokot
- ✓ Baron
- ✓ Tepeth
- ✓ Dodoth
- ✓ Suk
- ✓ Jie

b) Uganda

- ✓ Karimojong
- ✓ Bahima
- ✓ Jie

Why do pastoral tribes keep large number of animals?

- ✓ It is a sign of culture
- ✓ It is a sign of wealth
- ✓ For prestige

How are cattle important to nomadic pastoralists?

- ✓ It is a sign of culture
- ✓ It is a sign of wealth
- ✓ It is a sign of prestige
- ✓ It is a source of employment
- ✓ It is a source of food e.g. meat and milk
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling cattle
- ✓ It is used to pay dowry (bride price)
- ✓ It is a symbol of wealth.

Give any four problems faced by pastoral tribes in Africa

- ✓ Animal pests and diseases
- ✓ Shortage of food
- ✓ Prolonged drought
- ✓ Shortage of pasture for animals
- ✓ Shortage of water for animals
- ✓ Shortage of veterinary services
- ✓ Tribal wars
- ✓ Poor animal breeds
- ✓ Lack of permanent shelters
- ✓ Cattle rustling

What is cattle rustling?

- ✓ Cattle rustling is the stealing of large numbers of cattle among pastoral tribes.

How did the government of Uganda reduce cattle rustling among Karimojong?
- ✓ Disarming Karimojong
- ✓ Introducing ABEK

Write ABEK in full.
- ✓ Alternative Basic Education for Karamaja.

Why did the government of Uganda introduce ABEK?
- ✓ To reduce illiteracy among Karimojong.
- ✓ To reduce cattle rustling among Karimojong.

How can the government help pastoral tribes to have a settled life?
- ✓ Constructing valley dams for them
- ✓ Proving them water tanks
- ✓ Proving them better veterinary services
- ✓ Providing drought resistant pastures
- ✓ Constructing for them cattle dips to control ticks
- ✓ Constructing boreholes for them
- ✓ Encouraging them to setup ranches
- ✓ Encouraging them to practice mixed farming
- ✓ Engaging them in other productive projects

How is ranching different from pastoralism?
- ✓ Modern methods of animal rearing are used in ranching while traditional methods are used in pastoralism.
- ✓ Controlled grazing is used in ranching while open grazing is used pastoralism.
- ✓ Land is owned by individuals in ranching while in Pastoralism land is owned by the community

Ranching in South Africa
- ✓ Ranching is the rearing of animals for beef production.

Give any four factors that favour ranching in South Africa
- ✓ Good government policy.
- ✓ Good technology of processing beef.
- ✓ Good transport and communication.
- ✓ Good veterinary services.
- ✓ Good weather conditions
- ✓ Large market for beef.
- ✓ Presence of capital to invest in ranching.
- ✓ Presence of pasture and water for animals.
- ✓ Presence of cheap labour both skilled and unskilled.

Give any four products of ranching.
- ✓ Beef
- ✓ Hides
- ✓ skins
- ✓ Horns

How does ranching contribute to economic development of South Africa?
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling beef.
- ✓ It leads to development of roads.

State any four problems faced by ranching in South Africa
- ✓ Animal diseases.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of beef.
- ✓ Poor veterinary services.
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour
- ✓ Shortage of market for beef.
- ✓ Shortage of funds to invest in ranching.
- ✓ Shortage of pasture and water for animals.
- ✓ Competition from other beef producing countries

***Notes**: There are some ranches in East Africa.*

a) ***Uganda***

Ranch	***District***
Nyabushozi ranch	Mbarara
Singo ranch	Kiboga
Kisozi	Mpigi
Kabula ranch	Sembabule
Buruli ranch	Nakasongola
Marizi ranch	Apac
Achwa ranch	Kitgum
Usuk ranck	Katakwi
Bunyoro ranch	Masindi

b) ***Kenya** - Kiptei group of ranches*

Dairy farming in South Africa

✓ Dairy farming is the rearing of animals for milk production.

Give any four factors that have led to the growth of dairy farming in South Africa

✓ Good government policy.
✓ Good technology of processing milk.
✓ Good transport and communication.
✓ Good veterinary services.
✓ Good weather conditions
✓ Large market for milk.
✓ Presence of dairy cows.
✓ Presence of exotic breed of cattle
✓ Presence of capital to invest in ranching.
✓ Presence of pasture and water for animals.
✓ Presence of cheap labour both skilled and unskilled.

Apart from dairy cows, name other animals which are kept for milk production.

✓ Goats
✓ Sheep
✓ Camels
✓ Horses
✓ Donkeys

Give any three examples of exotic bread of cattle reared in South Africa

✓ Friesians
✓ Jersey
✓ Guernsey

Give any four products from a dairy farm.

✓ Milk
✓ Hooves
✓ Horn tips
✓ Hides

Give the use of the following products from a ranch farm.

Product	***Use***
✓ Horn tips	✓ For making buttons ✓ For making ornaments
✓ Hooves	✓ For making glue
✓ Skins and hides	✓ For making shoes and bags

Give any four products from milk /dairy products

- ✓ Butter
- ✓ Yoghurt
- ✓ Cheese
- ✓ Ghee

Give any four importance of dairy farming

- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling milk.
- ✓ It is a source of food e.g. milk.
- ✓ It is used for scientific and study research

Give any four problems faced by dairy farming in South Africa

- ✓ Animal diseases.
- ✓ Price fluctuation of milk.
- ✓ Poor veterinary services.
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour
- ✓ Shortage of market for milk.
- ✓ Shortage of funds to invest in ranching.
- ✓ Shortage of pasture and water for animals.
- ✓ Competition from other milk producing countries

Note: *In East Africa, Dairy farming is practiced in western Uganda, Southern Tanzania, and Kenya highlands.*

Sheep and goat rearing in South Africa

Name the leading producer of wool in the world.

- ✓ South Africa

Name the seaport through which South Africa exports her wool.

- ✓ Port Elizabeth

Name the main type of sheep mainly reared in South Africa.

- ✓ Merino sheep

Which type of climate favours the rearing of merino sheep in South Africa?

- ✓ Temperate climate (Highveld climate)

Mention any two places where merino sheep is reared in South Africa.

- ✓ Cape Province
- ✓ Orange Free State

Give any four factors that favour merino sheep rearing in South Africa

- ✓ Good government policy.
- ✓ Good veterinary services.
- ✓ Good transport and communication.
- ✓ Large market for wool.
- ✓ Presence of cool climate
- ✓ Presence of good breeds of sheep
- ✓ Presence of pasture and water for sheep
- ✓ Presence of cheap labour both skilled and unskilled.
- ✓ Presence of capital

How doses Merino sheep rearing contribute to the economic development of South Africa.

- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It is a source of income after selling wool.
- ✓ It is a source of food e.g. mutton

Give any four problems faced by merino sheep rearing in South Africa
- ✓ Animal diseases
- ✓ Poor veterinary services.
- ✓ Shortage of market for wool
- ✓ Shortage of pasture and water for sheep.
- ✓ Shortage of funds to invest in merino sheep rearing.
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour

Which type of goat breed is mainly reared in South Africa?
- ✓ Angola goat

Why are goats commonly kept by people in Africa than cattle?
- ✓ Goats need a small area of land to be cared for unlike cattle
- ✓ Goats are friendlier than cattle
- ✓ Goats are easier to care than cattle
- ✓ Goats are easier to handle than cattle
- ✓ Goats are easier to breed than cattle

Mention any four social importance of goats.
- ✓ Goats are used as sacrifice to small gods.
- ✓ Goats are used to pay dowry
- ✓ Goads are used to pay pride price
- ✓ Goats are used to pay court fine

Irrigation farming in Africa

What is irrigation?
- ✓ Irrigation is the artificial method watering of crops in dry area.

What is irrigation farming?
- ✓ Irrigation forming is the process when a piece of land is supplied with water to support plant growth.

Mention any four methods of irrigation
- ✓ Overhead sprinkler irrigation
- ✓ Gravitational flow irrigation (gravity canal flow irrigation)
- ✓ Drip irrigation
- ✓ Bucket irrigation (manual)

Mention any four advantages of irrigation farming
- ✓ It helps farmers not to wait for rainy season
- ✓ It helps crops not to be affected by too much sunshine
- ✓ It helps to turn desert areas to arable areas
- ✓ It increases agricultural activities in dry areas

State any four disadvantages of irrigation farming.
- ✓ It is expensive to start and manage
- ✓ It leads to soil erosion when poorly used.
- ✓ It leads to soil leaching when poorly used.
- ✓ It leads to soil exhaustion when poorly used.

Why irrigation farming is not common in most parts of Uganda.
- ✓ Most parts of Uganda receive reliable rainfall.
- ✓ Irrigation farming is expensive to start and manage

Note: *It is mainly carried out in areas that receive little or no rainfall (semi-arid areas)*

Why is irrigation farming common in dry areas?
- ✓ Dry areas receive little or no rainfall
- ✓ Dry areas have poor climate
- ✓ Dry areas have poor soils

State any four reasons why irrigation schemes are established in Africa.
- ✓ To increase agricultural output
- ✓ To put idle land into profitable use
- ✓ To settle the landless people
- ✓ To diversify agriculture
- ✓ To modernize farming

The Gezira Irrigation Scheme

Name the largest irrigation scheme in the world.
- ✓ Gezira irrigation scheme

In which country is Gezira irrigation scheme found?
- ✓ Sudan

Name the group of foreigners who built the Gezira irrigation scheme in 1952.
- ✓ British

Why was Sennar dam constructed near Gezira irrigation scheme?
- ✓ To provide water for irrigation at Gezira irrigation scheme.

Why Gezira irrigation scheme is also called perennial irrigation scheme?
- ✓ Irrigation on Gezira scheme is carried out throughout the year.

Name the major cash crop grown on the Gezira irrigation scheme.
- ✓ Cotton

Apart from cotton, name other four crops grown on the Gezira irrigation scheme
- ✓ Wheat
- ✓ Groundnuts
- ✓ Beans
- ✓ Maize
- ✓ Sorghum
- ✓ Millet
- ✓ Rice
- ✓ Vegetables

Name two extensions that were made on the Gezira irrigation scheme.

Extension	*Crop grown*
✓ Managil extension	✓ Cotton
✓ Kanana extension	✓ Sugarcane

Which type of irrigation method is used on the Gezira irrigation scheme?
- ✓ Gravity canal flow irrigation system.
- ✓ Overhead sprinkler irrigation system.

Which method of irrigation is commonly used on Gezira irrigation scheme?
- ✓ Gravity canal flow irrigation system.

Why is Gravity canal flow irrigation system commonly used on the Gezira irrigation scheme?
- ✓ To control the flow of water long the canals.

Name the place where Gezira irrigation scheme was established in Sudan.
- ✓ The land between the White Nile and the Blue Nile.

Name the body that manages Gezira irrigation scheme.
- ✓ Gezira Management Board.

Give any four roles of Gezira Management Board (GMB)

- ✓ It trains farmers better farming methods.
- ✓ It provides seeds and fertilizers to farmers.
- ✓ It supervises farmers at Gezira irrigation scheme.
- ✓ It provides pesticides and insecticides to farmers
- ✓ It organizes and controls water supply.
- ✓ It buys and markets the produce of farmers at Gezira irrigation scheme.
- ✓ It ploughs and allocates land to farmers on Gezira irrigation scheme.

State any four factors that favoured the establishment of the Gezira irrigation scheme.

- ✓ Presence of enough labour
- ✓ Presence of fertile soils
- ✓ Presence of capital from the government.
- ✓ Abundant supply of hydroelectric power.
- ✓ The area was free from diseases due to dryness.
- ✓ Presence of unoccupied land due to sparse population.
- ✓ Good climatic conditions that supported cotton growing.
- ✓ Cheap transport provided by the railway network in the area.
- ✓ Presence of the Blue Nile and White Nile which provide water for irrigation.
- ✓ Gentle slopes and flatness of the land for easy use of machines and flow of water.

How is Gezira irrigation scheme beneficial to Sudan?

- ✓ It attracts tourists who bring income.
- ✓ It creates jobs to people.
- ✓ It promotes better farming methods.
- ✓ It leads to the growth of agro-based industries.
- ✓ It leads to development of rods.
- ✓ It has improved on people's standards of living.
- ✓ It led to introduction of dairy farming.
- ✓ It is a source of foreign exchange to the government.
- ✓ Security for the people is ensured in the scheme.
- ✓ There are many sporting and leisure facilities.
- ✓ Farmers are trained in farm skills at demonstration farms.
- ✓ Some tenants have been encouraged to start private gardens.

Write down the roles of tenants on the Gezira irrigation scheme.

- ✓ To plant cotton
- ✓ To weed cotton
- ✓ To spray cotton
- ✓ To clear channels for irrigation
- ✓ To keep livestock
- ✓ To carryout crop rotation

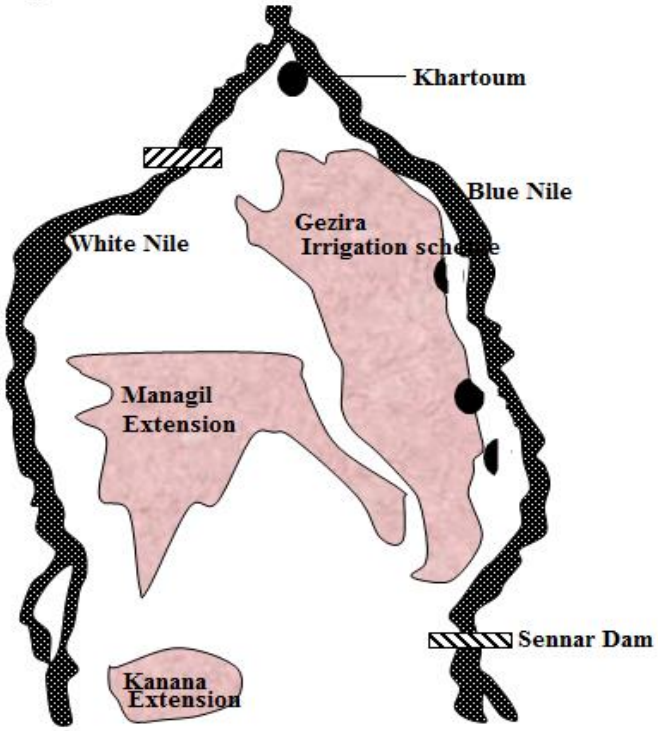
Give any four problems faced by Gezira irrigation scheme.

- ✓ Bilharzia
- ✓ Crop pests and diseases
- ✓ Serious Soil erosion
- ✓ Price fluctuation of cotton
- ✓ Shortage of labour during the harvest of cotton
- ✓ Silting of canals leads to regular emptying
- ✓ Competition from other cotton producing countries.

Give any four possible solutions to some of problems faced by Gezira irrigation scheme.

- ✓ Spraying of crops
- ✓ Emptying the canals
- ✓ Fixing of minimum cotton prices
- ✓ Ensuring good quality cotton.

A diagram showing Gezira irrigation scheme



Write down examples of irrigation schemes and major crops grown in Uganda

Irrigation scheme	District	Major crops grown
Kibimba/Tilda	Bugiri	Rice
Doho	Butaleja	Rice, cotton
Kakira	Jinja	Sugarcanes
Lugazi	Buikwe	Sugarcanes
Kunifra	Masindi	Sugarcanes
Sango bay	Rakai	Sugarcanes, maize
Mobuku(largest)	Kasese	Cotton, vegetable, citrus fruits
Busolwe	Butaleja	Cotton
Kiige	Bugiri	Citrus fruits
Daka	Manafa	Banana
Labori	Lira	Rice and oranges
Ongom	Lira	Citrus fruits
Atera	Apac	Cotton, millet and sorghum
Pado	Kitgum	Rice
Nsimbe		Flowers
Kiruruma		Vegetables

Name the body which was setup by the government to help the farmers in Uganda.

✓ NAADS

Write NAADS in full

✓ National Agricultural Advisory Services

Under which ministry does NAADS belong?

✓ Ministry of Agriculture, Animal Industry and Fisheries.

How do farmers benefit from NAADS?

✓ It educates farmers better farming methods
✓ It provides better breeds of cattle to farmers
✓ It provides better quality seeds to farmers

What is agriculture mechanization?

- ✓ Agriculture mechanization is the use of machines likes tractors in agriculture.

State any three factors that favour agriculture mechanization

- ✓ Presence of funds
- ✓ Presence of gentle sloping land
- ✓ Presence of skilled labour

State any three advantages of agricultural mechanization.

- ✓ It saves time because a large area is cultivated in short time.
- ✓ It requires less human labour.
- ✓ It simplifies work.

Give any three problems faced by agriculture mechanization

- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Shortage of skilled labour
- ✓ Hilly relief

Why is agriculture mechanization difficult in Kabale?

- ✓ Kabala is a hilly.

Give any three disadvantages of agricultural mechanization.

- ✓ It is very expensive to maintain.
- ✓ It requires skilled labour.
- ✓ It cannot be applied in hilly areas.
- ✓ It leads to unemployment of some people.

AFRICA'S CHALLENGES

- ✓ Africa is the least developed continent in the world.

Note: *Challenges that Africa face are classified into political, social and economic challenges.*

a) Social challenges

- ✓ Illiteracy
- ✓ Poverty
- ✓ Ignorance
- ✓ Diseases
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Disunity
- ✓ Early marriages
- ✓ Infant mortality rate
- ✓ Low life expectancy
- ✓ Rapid population growth
- ✓ Poor provision of social services

What is famine?

- ✓ Famine is the serious shortage of food in an area
- ✓ Famine is large scale shortage of food which lasts for long time in an area

State any four causes of famine in Africa.

- ✓ Civil wars
- ✓ Floods
- ✓ Drought
- ✓ Crop pests and diseases
- ✓ Poor farming methods
- ✓ Rural-urban migration
- ✓ Low investment in agriculture
- ✓ Poor food storage facilities

Give any four dangers of famine.

- ✓ Death of people.
- ✓ Migration
- ✓ Poor nutrition
- ✓ High government expenditure.

State any four ways of preventing famine in Africa.

- ✓ Using better farming methods
- ✓ Modernizing agriculture
- ✓ Promoting peace and security
- ✓ Setting up food stores
- ✓ Discouraging rural-urban migration
- ✓ Practicing irrigation farming

What is life expectancy?

- ✓ Life expectancy is the number of years a person is expected to live based on the statistical average.

State any four causes of low life expectancy in Africa.

- ✓ Poor nutrition
- ✓ Poor medical care
- ✓ High levels of poverty
- ✓ Lack of access to clean and safe water

Give any three ways of increasing life expectancy.

- ✓ Improving medical care
- ✓ Improving on nutrition
- ✓ Providing clean and safe water

What is infant mortality rate?

- ✓ Infant mortality rate is the death of young children under the age of one.

State any four causes of high infant mortality rate in Africa.

- ✓ Poor medical care
- ✓ Poor nutrition
- ✓ Poor sanitation
- ✓ Poor immunization services

Give any four ways of controlling infant mortality rate.

- ✓ Encouraging immunization programmes
- ✓ Discouraging early marriages
- ✓ Improving nutrition of babies
- ✓ Training more medical personnel

State any four ways of controlling high spread of diseases in Africa.

- ✓ Promoting personal hygiene and sanitation
- ✓ Sensitizing people about disease control
- ✓ Training more medical personnel
- ✓ Equipping medical facilities

What is illiteracy?

- ✓ Illiteracy is a situation where someone is unable to read and write.

Give any three causes of high rate of illiteracy in Africa.

- ✓ Education is expensive
- ✓ Lack of funds to invest in education
- ✓ Some cultures do not support education of girls

How is the government fighting illiteracy in Uganda?

- ✓ By introducing UPE
- ✓ By introducing USE
- ✓ By introducing ABEK
- ✓ By introducing Adult education
- ✓ Building and equipping schools

State any four reasons why the government has introduced UPE.

- ✓ To enable poor parents educate their children
- ✓ To enable the poor to access education
- ✓ To save the parents from the burden of paying school fees

Give any three ways parents have benefited from UPE.

- ✓ UPE has saved the parents from the burden of paying school fees
- ✓ UPE has enabled the poor parents to educate their children
- ✓ UPE has enabled the poor parents to access education

Write down problems faced by schools in Uganda

- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Shortage of classrooms
- ✓ Shortage of text books
- ✓ Shortage of furniture
- ✓ Shortage of teachers
- ✓ Shortage of scholastic material
- ✓ Overcrowding of pupils
- ✓ Embezzlement of funds by school administrators

State any four ways the government can help UPE schools

- ✓ By constructing enough classrooms
- ✓ By providing enough furniture to schools
- ✓ By providing enough scholastic materials to schools
- ✓ By enforcing strict laws against school administrators who embezzle school funds,

What is women emancipation?

- ✓ Women emancipation is the giving freedom to women to participate in all areas of development just like men.

Give any four advantages of women emancipation.

- ✓ It promotes gender equality
- ✓ It increases labour force
- ✓ It promotes girls' education
- ✓ It promotes development
- ✓ It promotes gender unity
- ✓ It improves women's standards of living

Give any four ways of promoting women emancipation.

- ✓ Promoting girl child education
- ✓ Discouraging early marriages among girls
- ✓ Stopping cultures that discriminate women
- ✓ Taking girls to school just like boys

How is women emancipation important to political development of a country?

- ✓ It enables women to contest for political posts.
- ✓ It enables women to fight for their rights.
- ✓ It enables women to participate in making national laws.
- ✓ It enables women to form political parties.

Why is government promoting girl- child education in Uganda?

- ✓ To promote equality
- ✓ To promote women emancipation
- ✓ To increase skilled labour force.
- ✓ To make girls have access to education

Why there is higher level of illiteracy among girls than boys?

- ✓ Some cultures do not support girl child education.
- ✓ Girls remain at home to do domestic work unlike boys.
- ✓ Higher rate early marriages among girls than boys.
- ✓ Higher rate school dropout among girls than boys.
- ✓ Some parents sell girls for money unlike boys.

How can girls' be encouraged to stay in school?

- ✓ Through guidance and counseling
- ✓ Teaching girls about dangers of early marriages
- ✓ Teaching girls about dangers of school dropout.
- ✓ Encouraging girls to abstain from sex.
- ✓ Giving girls enough scholastic materials.
- ✓ Giving girls prizes in schools.

How is education important to people?
- ✓ It helps people to get jobs
- ✓ It helps people to live together
- ✓ It promotes friendship among people.
- ✓ It helps people to healthy through awareness

Give any two AIDS has negatively affected the economic development of Uganda
- ✓ It has led to death of people which reduces labour force.
- ✓ It has led to death of people which reduces market for goods.
- ✓ It makes some people so weak to provide labour.

Give any two ways of promoting unity among people in Africa.
- ✓ Teaching patriotism
- ✓ Getting a national language in each country

b) Economic challenges.
- ✓ Corruption
- ✓ Unemployment
- ✓ Brain drain
- ✓ Inflation
- ✓ Poverty
- ✓ Debt burden
- ✓ Low levels of technology
- ✓ Foreign domination
- ✓ Poor transport and communication
- ✓ Economic collapse
- ✓ Production of similar goods
- ✓ High number of dependants
- ✓ Poor technology
- ✓ Shortage of funds.

What is corruption?
- ✓ Corruption is the misuse of public funds and assets for personal grains.

State any three causes of corruption
- ✓ Greedy for money
- ✓ Lack of strong anti-corruption courts
- ✓ Ignorance about dangers on corruption

Give any four forms of corruption
- ✓ Bribery
- ✓ Nepotism
- ✓ Tribalism
- ✓ Forgery
- ✓ Embezzlement

State any four ways of fighting against corruption.
- ✓ By teaching people about the dangers of corruption
- ✓ By setting up strong anti-corruption courts
- ✓ By enforcing strict laws against corrupt leaders
- ✓ Through the IGG investigating on corrupt leaders

How can corruption negatively affect economic development a country like Uganda?
- ✓ Under development
- ✓ Violets human rights
- ✓ High government expenditures
- ✓ Poor infrastructural development
- ✓ Poor provision of social services.
- ✓ Loss government revenue

Name any three bodies that check on corruption in Uganda.
- ✓ The Anti-corruption court
- ✓ The Anti-corruption coalition
- ✓ The office of IGG

Write IGG in full
- ✓ Inspector General of Government

What is foreign aid?
- ✓ Foreign aid is the assistance developed countries give to low developed countries.

Give any four forms of foreign aid.
- ✓ Loans
- ✓ Grants
- ✓ Donations
- ✓ Guns
- ✓ Expertise

Give the meaning of the following terms.
- ✓ **A loan** is the money borrowed and refunded by interest.
- ✓ **A grant** is nonrefundable money given to country to solve her problems.
- ✓ **Donatio**n is a non-payable assistance given to a country

Give any four organizations that give African countries foreign aid.
- ✓ Oxford
- ✓ World Bank
- ✓ Red Cross
- ✓ Action Aid
- ✓ United Nations Agencies

Mention the European countries that give foreign aid to Uganda.
- ✓ Netherlands
- ✓ France
- ✓ China
- ✓ Canada
- ✓ United States

State any four reasons why African countries need foreign aid.
- ✓ To get enough funds for their economy.
- ✓ To meet their national needs
- ✓ To help people affected by national disasters
- ✓ African countries are not self-reliant

How is foreign aid important to African Countries?
- ✓ It helps African countries to provide better social services
- ✓ It helps African countries to set up developmental projects
- ✓ It helps African countries to meet their budgets

State any four dangers of foreign aid to African countries.
- ✓ It promotes neocolonialism.
- ✓ It is expensive to pay.
- ✓ It has strings attached
- ✓ It makes African countries not to be self-reliant

Give any three ways of solving economic challenges of Africa
- ✓ Promoting technical education
- ✓ Settling up small scale industries
- ✓ Encouraging foreign investors

How can Africa countries solve the challenge of debt burden?
- ✓ By encouraging industrialization
- ✓ By getting grants instead of loans
- ✓ Fighting embezzlement and corruption

Give any two ways African countries can solve the challenge of brain drain
- ✓ By improving salaries and wages for the workers
- ✓ By improving working conditions of the workers

How can the challenge of production of similar goods be solved by African countries?
- ✓ Diversifying the economy

c) Political challenge
- ✓ Civil wars
- ✓ Coups
- ✓ Political insecurity
- ✓ Dictatorship
- ✓ Refugee problem
- ✓ Poor governance
- ✓ Neocolonialism

What is civil war?
- ✓ A civil war is an internal war in a country

State any four causes of civil wars in Africa.
- ✓ Poor governance
- ✓ Dictatorship
- ✓ Injustices
- ✓ Nepotism
- ✓ Tribalism
- ✓ Corruption
- ✓ Lack of democracy

State any four dangers of civil wars
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Death of people
- ✓ Human suffering
- ✓ Destruction of property
- ✓ Depopulation due migration
- ✓ Mistrust of the government

Give one way civil wars affects tourism industry
- ✓ Civil wars scare tourists to come in a country

How does a civil war in county affect neighbouring country?
- ✓ Increased refugee problem in the neighbouring country

What is dictatorship?
- ✓ Dictatorship is the misuse of power and not ruling according to the principles of democracy.

Give any three causes of dictatorship in Africa.
- ✓ Lack of democracy
- ✓ Poor governance
- ✓ Greedy for power

State any four characteristics of dictatorship.
- ✓ Innocent people are killed
- ✓ Innocent people are imprisoned
- ✓ Leaders do not listen to people
- ✓ Elections are not carries out regularly
- ✓ There is no freedom of expression
- ✓ There is no freedom of press
- ✓ There is no freedom of speech
- ✓ Leaders do not rule according to principles of democracy

Mention the countries where dictatorship has been practiced in Africa.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ DRC
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Tunisia
- ✓ Gambia
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ Morocco

Give any four dangers of dictatorship.
- ✓ Civil wars
- ✓ Office abuse
- ✓ Violation in the country
- ✓ Violation of human rights

State any four ways of fighting against dictatorship in Africa.
- ✓ Encouraging rule of law
- ✓ Setting up term limits
- ✓ Promoting democracy
- ✓ Setting up strong Anti-dictatorship courts

What is a military coup?
- ✓ A military coup is the sudden and violent attempt by citizens or army to change the government.

What is a coup?
- ✓ A coup is a sudden overthrow of the government of a country.

Name the countries that have ever experienced military coups in Africa.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Libya
- ✓ DRC
- ✓ Madagascar
- ✓ Morocco
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ Somalia
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Ghana
- ✓ Ethiopia

Write down causes of military coups in some countries in Africa
- ✓ Poor governance
- ✓ Dictatorship
- ✓ Tribalism
- ✓ Corruption
- ✓ Lack of democracy
- ✓ Lack of free and fair elections
- ✓ Mistakes by a national leaders

Give any four dangers of military coups.
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Death of people
- ✓ Depopulation due to migration.
- ✓ Destruction of property
- ✓ Displacement of people

Sate any four ways of controlling military coups in Africa.
- ✓ Conducting regular elections
- ✓ Promoting good governance
- ✓ Respecting human rights
- ✓ Favoring all tribes

World Wars and their effects

What is a world war?

- ✓ A world war is a war which involves almost all countries in the world.

World War I 1914-1918

- ✓ The First World War started when the Serbian student **Gavril Princip** shot and killed the Archduke of Australia **Franz Ferdinand.**

What were the causes of the World War I?

- ✓ Arms race
- ✓ The alliance system
- ✓ The rise of nationalism
- ✓ The assassination of Archduke of Australia
- ✓ Germany wish to control all colonies
- ✓ Difference in domestic policies

Give any four effects of the World War I

- ✓ Death of people
- ✓ Destruction of property
- ✓ Human suffering
- ✓ Formation of League of Nation
- ✓ Germany lost all her colonies.

Name any four countries where First World War was fought in Africa.

- ✓ Tanganyika
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi
- ✓ Cameroon
- ✓ Togo
- ✓ Namibia

Name the country in East Africa which greatly affected by the First World War.

- ✓ Tanganyika

Why did Tanganyika greatly affected by the First World War?

- ✓ Tanganyika was a battle field.

Why did Germany loose Tanganyika after the First World War?

- ✓ It was the punishment given to Germany for causing the First World War
- ✓ It was a sign of defeat of Germany.

Why did Uganda participate in the World War I?

- ✓ To give support to her colonial master Britain.

Formation League of Nations in 1920

Name the international organization that was formed to harmonize the world after the First World War.

- ✓ League of Nations.

Name the European countries which formed League of Nations.

- ✓ Britain
- ✓ France
- ✓ Italy

Name the European country which was lastly invited to join the League of Nations.

- ✓ Germany

Why did Germany join League of Nations lastly?
- ✓ Germany was accused for causing the First World War.

Note: *The League of Nations took over Germany's colonies as Mandate territories.*

Where were the headquarters of League of Nations found?
- ✓ Geneva in Switzerland

What were Mandate Territories?
- ✓ Mandate Territories were countries which Germany lost after the first world wars.

Mention three countries which were mandate territories in East Africa.
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi

Why Uganda was regarded as a mandate territory of Britain
- ✓ Britain never had permanent settlement in Uganda
- ✓ Britain ruled Uganda indirectly

Why was League of Nations formed in 1920?
- ✓ To promote respect for human rights.
- ✓ To promote peace and security in the world
- ✓ To unite the world after the First World War
- ✓ To harmonize the world after the First World War
- ✓ To find peaceful means of solving political problems.
- ✓ To prevent Germany from producing destructive weapons

State any three failures of League of Nations.
- ✓ It failed to setup a standing army
- ✓ It failed to stop the outbreak of the Second World War.
- ✓ It failed to control production of dangerous military weapons

Why did League of Nations fail to meet its objectives?
- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ It lacked a standing army
- ✓ Member countries were interested in their domestic affairs

World War II and its effects of 1939-1945

What were causes of World War II of 1939 – 1945?
- ✓ Arms race
- ✓ Alliance system
- ✓ Rise of Nationalism
- ✓ Germany attack of Poland
- ✓ Weaknesses of League of Nations
- ✓ Declaration of a war on Germany by Britain and France

Mention any four European countries that participated in the Second World War.
- ✓ Germany
- ✓ Italy
- ✓ Britain
- ✓ France

State any four effects of the second world war of 1939 – 1945.
- ✓ Death of people
- ✓ Destruction of property
- ✓ Human suffering
- ✓ Formation of United Nations Organization
- ✓ Speeded up independence struggles in Africa.
- ✓ Rise of USA and USSR as powerful Nations
- ✓ Germany was divided into East and West Germany

Major World Organizations

- ✓ World organizations are international organizations that provide services and assistance to people in different parts of the world.

Give any four examples of major world organizations

- ✓ The United Nations (UN)
- ✓ The Commonwealth Organization
- ✓ The African Union (AU)
- ✓ The European Union (EU)
- ✓ The World Trade Organization
- ✓ The Red Cross

The formation of the United Nations (UN)

Name the international organization which replaced League of Nations.

- ✓ The United Nations Organization (UNO)

When was United Nations formed?

- ✓ On 24th October, 1945

Why is every year United Nations Day celebrated on 24th October?

- ✓ It is when United Nations was launched.

Name the city were the headquarters of United Nations are found?

- ✓ New York City

Name four countries that were founder of UN.

- ✓ USA
- ✓ USSR
- ✓ Britain
- ✓ China
- ✓ France

Mention any three countries which are not members of United Nations.

- ✓ Western Sahara (In Africa)
- ✓ Kosovo
- ✓ Taiwan

Why United Nations was formed. (Objectives of UN)

- ✓ To prevent outbreak of another world war.
- ✓ To maintain international peace and security.
- ✓ To promote friendly relations among world nations.
- ✓ To promote economic development among member States.
- ✓ To promote and protect respect for human rights.
- ✓ To unite all countries in the world
- ✓ To promote world cooperation

Mention the organs of United Nations.

- ✓ General Assembly
- ✓ Security Council
- ✓ Economic and Social Council
- ✓ Secretariat
- ✓ International Court of Justice

General Assembly

- ✓ It is made up of representatives from all member States

Give any four functions of the General Assembly of UN.
- ✓ It is the main organ of UN
- ✓ It discusses important world issues
- ✓ It admits new member States
- ✓ It elects some of the members of other organs of UN.
- ✓ It receives reports from other organs of UN.

Mention any four languages used in UN General Assembly
- ✓ English
- ✓ Arabic
- ✓ Spanish
- ✓ Russian
- ✓ French
- ✓ Chinese

Security Council
- ✓ It is responsible for maintaining peace and security in the world.
- ✓ It receives applications from the countries that want to join UN
- ✓ It sends peacekeeping forces to countries affected by political conflicts.

Name the peacekeeping organ of UN.
- ✓ Security Council

Name the permanent member States of the Security Council.
- ✓ USA
- ✓ Britain
- ✓ China
- ✓ France
- ✓ Russia

The secretariat

What title is given to head of the secretariat of UN?
- ✓ Secretary General

Who is the current secretary general of the UN?
Antonio Guterres

Name the town were the headquarters of UN secretariat found.
- ✓ New York.

Give any four roles of the secretariat of UN.
- ✓ It runs the day to day activities of the UN.
- ✓ It monitors peacekeeping operations of UN.
- ✓ It organizes all UN international meetings.
- ✓ It translates UN international documents.
- ✓ It finds solutions to international disputes.
- ✓ It makes agenda for General Assembly.
- ✓ It makes a budget for General Assembly.
- ✓ It complies and keeps records of world statistical information.

The Internal Court of Justice
- ✓ Its headquarters are found in Hague(Netherlands)
- ✓ It is also called the **World Court**.

State any two roles of the International Court of Justice.
- ✓ It settles internal disputes.
- ✓ It is the main judicial organ of UN
- ✓ It safeguards the UN Charter.
- ✓ It advises the General Assembly and other organs of the UN on matters of law.

Economic and Social Council
- ✓ It uplifts the standard of living among the people in the world.

What were Trusteeship nations?

- ✓ Trusteeship nations were former colonies of Italy and Germany which were handed over to the United Nations.

Name any four countries that were trustee territories after the Second World War.

- ✓ Togo
- ✓ Cameroon
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ Burundi

State any four importance of the United Nations.

- ✓ It unites countries in the world.
- ✓ It provides technical assistance to developing countries.
- ✓ It promotes trade among countries in the world.
- ✓ It provides funds for development to under Low Developed Countries.
- ✓ It maintains world peace and security.
- ✓ It promotes international cooperation.
- ✓ It promotes and protects human rights.
- ✓ It protects the natural environment through UNEP.
- ✓ It controls and the production and use of dangerous military weapons.

Write down the agencies of United Nations.

- ✓ World Trade Union (UTU)
- ✓ World Food Programme (WFP)
- ✓ International Monetary Fund (IMF)
- ✓ World Health Organization (WHO)
- ✓ International Labour Organization (ILO)
- ✓ Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO)
- ✓ United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF)
- ✓ United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA)
- ✓ United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP)
- ✓ United Nations Development programme (UNDP)
- ✓ United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)
- ✓ United Nations Industrial Development Organization (UNIDO)
- ✓ International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD)
- ✓ United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO)

United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF)

- ✓ It responsible for the welfare of children in the whole world.
- ✓ Its headquarters are in **New York.**

State any four roles/functions of UNICEF

- ✓ It protects and advocates for the rights of children throughout the world.
- ✓ It protects children from violence and abuse.
- ✓ It promotes gender equality through girl-child education.
- ✓ It funds immunization programme.
- ✓ It provides wheel chairs to disable children
- ✓ It provides drugs and clothes to children
- ✓ It provides safe water by constructing boreholes
- ✓ It provides health kits to medical centre and schools
- ✓ It provides tanks for harvesting rain water in schools.

United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)

- ✓ It is responsible for the refugee in the world.
- ✓ Its headquarters are in **Geneva in Switzerland.**

Who is a refugee?

- ✓ A refugee is a person who goes to foreign country due to wars or natural disasters in his/her country.

State any four causes of refugee problem in Africa
- ✓ Civil wars
- ✓ Famine
- ✓ Floods
- ✓ Earthquakes
- ✓ Landslides
- ✓ Pests and diseases
- ✓ Volcanic eruption

What is the major cause of refugees in Africa?
- ✓ Civil wars

Name any three internal organizations that help refugees in Africa.
- ✓ UNHCR
- ✓ International committee of the Red Cross
- ✓ The World Food Program

Mention any four problems faced refugees in their camps.
- ✓ Shortage of food
- ✓ Poor accommodation
- ✓ Poor medical services
- ✓ Shortage of beddings
- ✓ Poverty
- ✓ Unemployment
- ✓ Diseases

State any four roles/functions of UNHCR.
- ✓ It provides food to refugees
- ✓ It registers refugees
- ✓ It accommodates refugees
- ✓ It transports refugees to safer areas
- ✓ It protects the rights to the refugees
- ✓ It provides education to the refugees
- ✓ It provides medical care to refugees
- ✓ It provides security to refugees
- ✓ It provides safe water to refugees

Which ministry in Uganda is responsible for helping refugees and people affected by natural disasters?
- ✓ Ministry of Relief, Disaster Preparedness and Refugees.

How can refugee problem be solved in Africa?
- ✓ Promoting good governance.
- ✓ Preventing civil wars.

Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO)
- ✓ It is concerned with food production the world.
- ✓ Its headquarters are in **Rome in Italy.**

State any four roles of FAO.
- ✓ To provide food to countries affected by famine.
- ✓ To increase food production in the world.
- ✓ To improve people's nutrition
- ✓ To setup food stores.

World Food Programme (WFP)
- ✓ Its headquarters are in Rome in Italy.

State any two roles/functions of WFP.
- ✓ It provides food to people in refugee camps.
- ✓ It improves the nutrition quality of vulnerable people.
- ✓ It helps people to achieve food supply self-reliance in the world

World Health Organization (WHO)
- ✓ It is responsible for health of the people in the whole world.
- ✓ The headquarters are in **Geneva in Switzerland**

Give any four functions/roles of WHO.
- ✓ It trains doctors and nurses
- ✓ It provides drugs in hospitals
- ✓ It controls outbreak of strange diseases
- ✓ It makes research on strange diseases
- ✓ It funds immunization programmes.

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO)
- ✓ Its headquarters are in **Paris in France.**

State any three functions/roles of UNESCO
- ✓ To preserve culture in the world.
- ✓ To promote education in developing countries.
- ✓ To promote science and technology in developing countries.
- ✓ It advocates for protection and promotion of respect justice and human rights.

International Labour Organization (ILO)
- ✓ It is concerned with the welfare of workers in the world.
- ✓ Its headquarters are in **Geneva in Switzerland.**

Mention any four functions /roles of ILO.
- ✓ It advocates for the better salaries of the workers.
- ✓ It advocates for the rights of workers
- ✓ It fights exploitations of workers
- ✓ It provides financial assistance to workers in the world

International Monetary Fund (IMF)
- ✓ It is funded by World Bank.
- ✓ It is responsible for money distribution in the world.
- ✓ Its headquarters are in **Washington DC-USA.**

Give any four functions/roles of IMF
- ✓ It fights inflation in the world.
- ✓ It advises countries on how to use money
- ✓ It provides loans to countries with financial difficulties.
- ✓ It supports developing countries to exploit their resources effectively.
- ✓ It guides developing countries on policies that promote development.

International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD)
- ✓ It is also called the World Bank.
- ✓ Its headquarters are in Washington in USA.

Give any four functions/roles of IMF.
- ✓ It provides loans to countries with financial difficulties.
- ✓ It funds agriculture programmes in developing countries.
- ✓ It funds road construction in developing countries.
- ✓ It funds electricity supply and dam construction in developing countries.

United Nations Industrial Development Organization (UNIDO)
- ✓ Its headquarters are in Vienna in Australia.
- ✓ It promotes industrial development in developing countries.

United Nations Development programme (UNDP)
- ✓ Its headquarters are in New York.

Give any four functions/roles of UNDP.
- ✓ It reduces poverty in developing countries.
- ✓ It improves the people's life in developing countries.
- ✓ It funds developmental projects in developing countries.

United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA)
- ✓ Its headquarters are in New York.

Give any four functions/roles of UNFPA.
- ✓ It funds census programme in developing countries.
- ✓ It funds family planning methods in developing countries.
- ✓ It promotes girl-child education in developing countries.

Human rights in the United Nations (UN) charter
- ✓ The universal declaration of human rights was adopted on 10th December 1948

State any four ways human rights are declared in the UN charter.
- ✓ No one shall be held in slavery.
- ✓ No one should be tortured.
- ✓ Everyone has a right to nationality
- ✓ Everyone has right to education.
- ✓ Everyone has a right to employment.
- ✓ Everyone is entitled to all the rights and freedom
- ✓ Everyone is born free and equal in dignity and rights
- ✓ Everyone is free to reside or move anywhere in the country.
- ✓ People have a right to practice any religion of their choice.
- ✓ People have a right conduct or attend peaceful gatherings.
- ✓ Mothers and children should be given special care.
- ✓ All adult men and women have a right to freely get married and start family.

How are human rights violated in Africa?
- ✓ Through human trafficking.
- ✓ Through genocide.
- ✓ Through sex mutilation.
- ✓ Through human torture.
- ✓ Through abduct.
- ✓ Through massacre
- ✓ Through rape
- ✓ Through defilement
- ✓ Imprisoning people without court trial.
- ✓ Denying people freedom of speech.
- ✓ Denying people movement.
- ✓ Through discrimination of people basing on race, colour, sex, and religion.

State any four ways of promoting respect for human rights.
- ✓ Education people about their rights.
- ✓ Promoting good governance through democracy.
- ✓ Publishing human rights violators.
- ✓ Arresting human rights violators.
- ✓ Investigating cases of human rights violation.
- ✓ Enforcing strict laws on human rights violation

How do member countries benefit from UN?
- ✓ It fosters friendly relations between its members.
- ✓ It promotes human rights in its member countries.
- ✓ It promotes good governance in it member countries.
- ✓ It harmonizes it member countries.
- ✓ It reduces hunger, diseases and illiteracy in its member countries.
- ✓ It solves international problems in its member countries.
- ✓ It promotes economic development in its member countries.

Give any four failures of United Nations (UN)
- ✓ It has failed to end civil wars in some member countries.
- ✓ It has failed to end poverty in some member countries.
- ✓ It has failed to unite all countries in the world.
- ✓ It has failed to remove terrorism in the world.
- ✓ It has failed to remove refugee problem in the world.
- ✓ It has failed to end human rights violation.

Give similarities between UN and AU.
- ✓ Both promote peace and security in member countries
- ✓ Both promote unity in member countries
- ✓ Both promote human rights in member countries
- ✓ Both promote good governance in member countries
- ✓ Both promote democracy in member countries
- ✓ Both friendship and cooperation in member countries
- ✓ Both aim at improving the standards of people in member countries.

State any three differences between UN and AU.
- ✓ UN is larger than AU in terms of membership
- ✓ UN unites all countries in the world while AU unites African countries.
- ✓ UN headquarters are in New York while AU headquarters are in Addis Ababa

Mention any four international organizations that provide relief aid to people.
- ✓ International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC)
- ✓ United States Agency on International Development (USAID)
- ✓ United Kingdom on International Development (UKAID)
- ✓ Save the children fund
- ✓ Amnesty International

International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC)

Name the largest the largest voluntary organization in the world.
- ✓ International Committee of the Red Cross

*Note: ICRC is also called **Red Crescent**. ICRC is called "**The Uganda Red Cross Society" in Uganda.***

Who was the founder of the International Committee of the Red Cross?
- ✓ Henry Dunant

Where are the headquarters of the International Committee of the Red Cross found?
- ✓ Geneva in Switzerland.

State any four functions/roles of the International Committee of the Red Cross
- ✓ It provides first aid to war victims
- ✓ It provides foods to war victims
- ✓ It provides food to refugees
- ✓ It donates blood to sick people
- ✓ It provides counseling and guidance to people
- ✓ It carries out Primary Health Care
- ✓ It transports refugees to safer areas
- ✓ It provides assistance to people affected by natural hazards

Give any three similarities between Red Cross and UNICEF.
- ✓ Both provide medical care
- ✓ Both train medical workers.
- ✓ Both carryout Primary Health Care

Give any three differences between Red Cross and UNICEF.
- ✓ Red Cross helps war victims while UNICEF cares for children.
- ✓ Red Cross is a voluntary organization while UNICEF is an agency of United Nations
- ✓ Red Cross carries out blood transfusion unlike UNICEF.

Uganda Women's Effort to Save the Orphans (UWESO)

Who was the founder of UWESO?
- ✓ Janet Kataha Museveni.

Give any four roles/functions of UWESO.
- ✓ It cares for widows
- ✓ It provides food to orphans
- ✓ It provides education to orphans
- ✓ It provides clothes to orphans
- ✓ It provides medical care to orphans
- ✓ It provides accommodation to orphans

State any two challenges faced by UWESO.
- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Corruption among its officials

The AIDS Support Organization (TASO)

Who was the founder of TASO?
- ✓ Noerine Kaleeba.

Give any four functions/roles of TASO.
- ✓ It cares for the HIV/AIDS victims
- ✓ It cares for orphans infected with HIV/AIDS.
- ✓ It treats HIV/AIDS victims
- ✓ It counsels and guides the HIV/AIDS victims
- ✓ It provides food to the HIV/AIDS victims

State any four challenges faced by the United Nations.
- ✓ Civil wars in some member countries
- ✓ Poverty in some member countries
- ✓ Dictatorship in some member countries
- ✓ Terrorism is some member countries
- ✓ Misunderstandings among leaders of member countries

Commonwealth of Nations
- ✓ Commonwealth of Nations is an international organization of independent countries that have colonial ties with Britain.

***Note**: Commonwealth of Nations is made up of Britain and her former colonies, protectorates, and dominion States.*

What are commonwealth nations?
- ✓ Commonwealth nations are independent countries that have colonial ties with Britain.

Name the city where the headquarters of Commonwealth of Nations are found?
- ✓ London

Who is the head of Commonwealth Organization?
- ✓ Queen Elizabeth II of England.

Who was the first African secretary General of Commonwealth of Nations?
- ✓ Chief Emeka Anyaouku

Who is the current secretary General of Commonwealth of Nations?
- ✓ Patricia Scotland

Why was Commonwealth of Nations formed? (Objectives of UNO)
- ✓ To unite all countries that have colonial ties with Britain.
- ✓ To promote trade among member countries
- ✓ To promote good governance and democracy among member countries
- ✓ To create a wider market for goods of member countries
- ✓ To uplift the standard of living among member countries
- ✓ To promote human rights among member countries
- ✓ To promote education and sports among member countries
- ✓ To provide financial assistance to member countries
- ✓ To promote peace among member countries
- ✓ To promote agriculture among member countries

Mention member countries of Commonwealth of Nations in Africa.
- ✓ Uganda
- ✓ Kenya
- ✓ Tanzania
- ✓ Rwanda
- ✓ South Africa
- ✓ Nigeria
- ✓ Malawi
- ✓ Zambia
- ✓ Lesotho
- ✓ Botswana
- ✓ Sierra Leone
- ✓ Seychelles
- ✓ Namibia
- ✓ Mozambique
- ✓ Mauritius

How does a country become a member of Commonwealth of Nations?
- ✓ Through appointment.

Mention any three former member States of Commonwealth of Nations.
- ✓ Zimbabwe
- ✓ Ireland
- ✓ Maldives

How do member countries benefit from Commonwealth of Nations?
- ✓ They exchange ideas on political affairs.
- ✓ They work together in defence matters.
- ✓ They share medical expertise.
- ✓ They participate in commonwealth games.
- ✓ People from member States get scholarships
- ✓ People from member countries get jobs.
- ✓ It promotes trade in member countries
- ✓ It widens market for goods of member countries.
- ✓ It promotes human rights in member countries
- ✓ It promotes good governance and democracy in member countries.

Mention any four things shared by commonwealth counties.
- ✓ English as official language
- ✓ Queen of England as their leader
- ✓ Expertise such as doctors.
- ✓ Education
- ✓ Trade

State any three activities of Commonwealth of Nations.
- ✓ Organizes commonwealth games
- ✓ Organizes trade shows
- ✓ Organizes CHOGM

What are dominion States?

- ✓ Dominion States are independent countries which regard the Queen of England as their head of State and use laws made by the British parliament.

Name any three examples of dominion States.

- ✓ Canada
- ✓ Austria
- ✓ New Zealand

Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM)

- ✓ This is a meeting which is organized by the Commonwealth of Nations in its member countries.

***Note**: CHOGM held in Uganda in 2007.*

Who is a High commissioner?

- ✓ A High commissioner is a representative of a commonwealth country in another commonwealth country.

Who is an Ambassador?

- ✓ An Ambassador is a representative of a commonwealth country in a non-commonwealth country.

How do member countries of commonwealth benefit from CHOGM?

- ✓ They get market for their goods
- ✓ They get foreign exchange
- ✓ It promotes international friendship
- ✓ It promotes unity and cooperation among them
- ✓ It leads to development of infrastructures in member countries
- ✓ People from member countries get jobs.

How did Uganda benefit from hosting CHOGM in 2007?

- ✓ Ugandans got jobs
- ✓ New roads were constructed
- ✓ Uganda was known to outside world
- ✓ Uganda got market for her goods
- ✓ Uganda got foreign currency
- ✓ Uganda strengthened peace and unity with other commonwealth countries

State any four similarities between UN and Commonwealth of Nations.

- ✓ Both promote peace and security in member countries
- ✓ Both promote unity in member countries
- ✓ Both promote human rights in member countries
- ✓ Both promote good governance in member countries
- ✓ Both promote democracy in member countries
- ✓ Both friendship and cooperation in member countries
- ✓ Both aim at improving the standards of people in member countries.

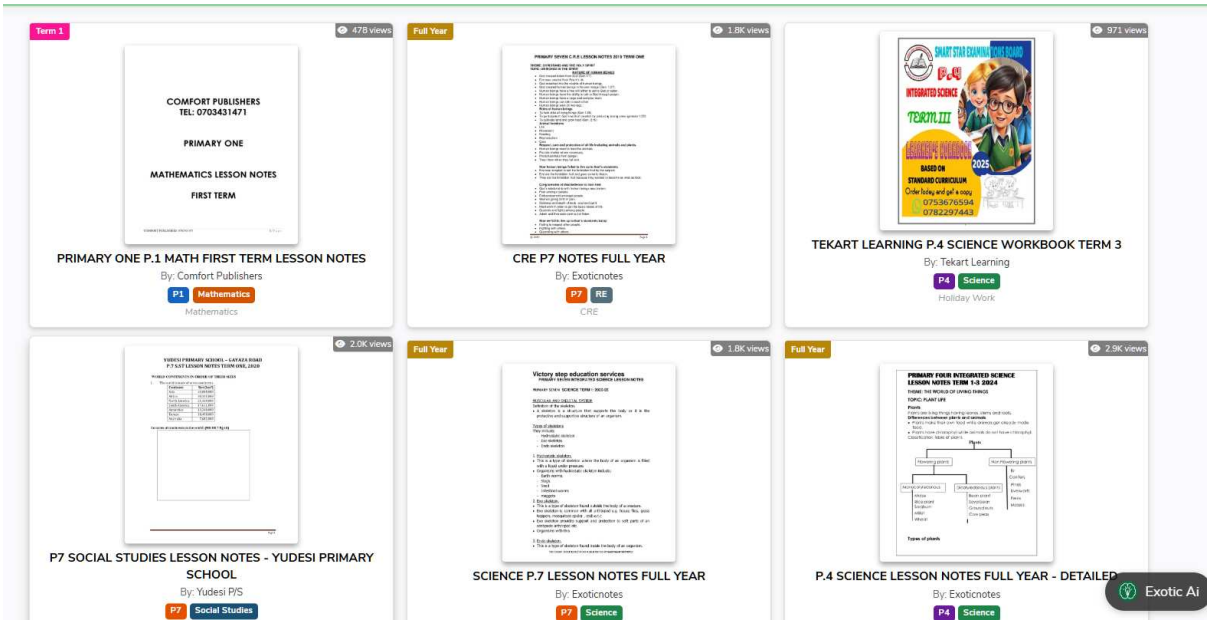
Give any four differences between UN and Commonwealth.

- ✓ UN is larger than Commonwealth in terms of membership.
- ✓ UN headquarters are in New York while those of Commonwealth are in London.
- ✓ UN can send peacekeeping forces to member countries affected with wars unlike commonwealth.
- ✓ Commonwealth has Queen Elizabeth II as its head while UN does not have one person as top leader.
- ✓ UN unites all world countries while Commonwealth unites all countries with colonial ties with Britain.
- ✓ UN has the International Court of Justice which handles cases of disagreements between its member countries unlike Commonwealth.

Give any four challenges faced by Commonwealth of Nations.

- ✓ Shortage of funds
- ✓ Civil wars in some member countries
- ✓ Poverty in member countries
- ✓ Dictatorship in some member countries
- ✓ Misunderstandings among leaders of member countries
- ✓ Lack of standing peacekeeping forces
- ✓ Terrorism is some member countries

This document was downloaded from https://exoticnotes.com



Do you need more LESSON NOTES for Primary (All classes)?

Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/

If you need LESSON NOTES for SCIENCE (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/science/

If you need LESSON NOTES for English (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/english/

If you need LESSON NOTES for Mathematics (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/mathematics/